



**CLEMONS,
RUTHERFORD
& ASSOCIATES, INC.**

ARCHITECTS

■

PLANNERS

■

INTERIOR DESIGNERS

■

CONSTRUCTION MANAGERS

2027 Thomasville Road
Tallahassee, FL 32308
p: 850-385-6153
f: 850-386-8420
www.craarchitects.com

PROJECT MANUAL

JACKSON COUNTY



**JACKSON COUNTY SHERIFF'S OFFICE
NEW FACILITY**

MARIANNA, FLORIDA

CRA PROJECT NUMBER: 24020

September 25, 2025

(100% CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS)

VOLUME II
2 OF 2

SET NUMBER:

The Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by Clemons, Rutherford & Associates, Inc. (CRA) for this project are instruments of CRA for use solely with respect to this project and, unless otherwise provided, CRA shall be deemed the author of these documents and shall retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, including the copyright. The Owner shall be permitted to retain copies, including reproducible copies, of CRA's Drawings, Specifications and other documents for information and reference in connection with the Owner's use and occupancy of the Project. CRA's Drawings, Specifications or other documents shall not be used by the Owner or others on other projects, for additions to this Project or for completion of this Project by others, unless the Architect is adjudged to be in default under this Agreement, except by agreement in writing and with appropriate compensation to CRA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

JACKSON COUNTY SHERIFF'S OFFICE NEW FACILITY

VOLUME 1

DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY OF WORK
SECTION 012150 - THRESHOLD INSPECTION PLAN
SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTIONS PROCEDURES
SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES
SECTION 013100 - PROJECT COORDINATION
SECTION 013150 - CUTTING AND PATCHING
SECTION 013200 - PROJECT MEETINGS
SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTALS
SECTION 014000 - QUALITY CONTROL SERVICES
SECTION 014200 - DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS
SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES
SECTION 015500 - MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
SECTION 017800 - WARRANTIES AND BONDS

DIVISION 2 - EXISTING CONDITIONS - N/A

DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE

SECTION 031100 - CONCRETE FORMING
SECTION 032000 - CONCRETE REINFORCING
SECTION 033000 - CONCRETE WORK

DIVISION 4 - MASONRY

SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

DIVISION 5 - METALS

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL
SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOISTS
SECTION 053000 - METAL DECKING
SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS
SECTION 055150 - LADDERS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (continued):

DIVISION 6 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY
SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING
SECTION 064123 - PLASTIC LAMINATE CLAD CABINETS
SECTION 066510 - SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS

DIVISION 7 - MOISTURE PROTECTION

SECTION 071900 - WATER REPELLENTS
SECTION 072100 - BUILDING INSULATION
SECTION 072726 - LIQUID VAPOR AND AIR BARRIER
SECTION 074213 - METAL WALL PANELS
SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC MEMBRANE ROOFING FLEECEBACK PVC MEMBRANE
SECTION 076200 - FLASHING AND SHEET METAL
SECTION 076310 - GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS
SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALERS

DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS

SECTION 080500 - DOOR SCHEDULE
SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS
SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STORE FRONTS
SECTION 087100 - FINISH HARDWARE
SECTION 088000 - GLASS AND GLAZING

DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM DRYWALL
SECTION 093000 - TILE
SECTION 095100 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS
SECTION 096500 - LUXURY VINYL TILE
SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT WALL BASE
SECTION 096800 - CARPET
SECTION 098000 - ACOUSTICAL PANELS
SECTION 099100 - PAINTING

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

SECTION 101000 - MARKERBOARDS AND TACKBOARDS
SECTION 101600 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS
SECTION 102800 - TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES
SECTION 104400 - SIGNAGE
SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS AND ACCESSORIES
SECTION 107516 - GROUND-SET FLAGPOLES

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS - N/A

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION - N/A

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING SYSTEMS - N/A

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK-TERMITE CONTROL

SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL

TABLE OF CONTENTS (continued):

VOLUME 2

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION
SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING
SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 210548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION
SECTION 211119 - FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS
SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS
SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING
SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING
SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT
SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING
SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS
SECTION 220719.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES
SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING
SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS
SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS
SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS
SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES
SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS
SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING
SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

DIVISION 23 - HVAC

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC
SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (continued):

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING
SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING
SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC
SECTION 232113.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING
SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING
SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC
SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS
SECTION 233416.11 - SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS
SECTION 233423.12 - CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS
SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS
SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS
SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES
SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS
SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS
SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION
SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS
SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL
SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES
SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES
SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS
SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS
SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS
SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES
SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS
SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING
SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY
SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES
SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES
SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS
SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING
SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS
SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS
SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING
SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (continued):

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS
SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES
SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING
SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
SECTION 280523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
SECTION 280544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
PATHWAYS AND CABLING
SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT
SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES
SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS
SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES

DIVISION 29 - FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATION

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS
SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS
SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

Mechanical, Electrical and
Plumbing Firm

H2Engineering, Inc.
114 East 5th Avenue
Tallahassee, Florida 32303
Certificate of Authorization #2485

Mechanical Engineer

Jeffrey L. Tyler, PE
Divisions 21, 22, 23,
Florida #57093

Electrical Engineer

Matthew T. Scaringe, PE
Divisions 26, 27, 28, 29
Florida #54639

Applicable Codes Listed In: 210100, 220100, 230100, 260100, 270100, 280100, 290100

END TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 21 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for fire-suppression systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 - 2. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 13 Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems - 2019
 - c. NFPA 25 Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems - 2020
 - d. NFPA 30A Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages - 2021
 - e. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - f. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code – 2019
 - g. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment – 2020
 - h. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - i. NFPA 150 Standard on Fire and Life Safety in Animal Housing Facilities – 2019
 - j. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2019
 - k. NFPA 2001 Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems – 2020
 - 3. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Accessibility Code
 - 4. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 - 5. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-32 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Fire Protection Systems
 - c. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - d. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 - 6. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

9. Electrical Modifications:

- a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Fire Suppression systems at the time of design.
- b. If Fire Suppression equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
- c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.

B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.

C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.

D. Submittal Review Fees:

1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.

B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.13 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 - 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 - 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.15 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 - 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 - 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.16 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

1.17 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.
- E. Interruption of Service: Before any existing equipment or system is shut down for disconnecting or tie-ins, coordinate with Engineer and Owner regarding acceptable dates and times for this Work to be performed. Work shall be performed at the time best suited for the Owner, which typically is either on weekends, holidays, and/or after normal working hours. Services shall be restored the same day unless prior arrangements are made. All overtime or premium costs associated with this Work shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

3.07 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FINISHES, CARPET, AND FURNISHING

- A. Protect existing finishes, carpet, casework, furnishing, and other building components against damage and soiling throughout construction activities. Take care during construction not to damage existing items. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing damaged material or restoring damaged materials to the Owner's satisfaction.
- B. When permitted by Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during construction and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.
- C. Furniture may be relocated during construction and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.
- D. Means and methods for protection are the responsibility of the Contractor. Utilize plywood, polyethylene sheeting, dust cloths, and other means as required.

3.08 UTILITY SERVICES AND FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and fire-suppression systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

3.09 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.
- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 21. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted otherwise):
 - a. Fire Protection: To be determined by Architect
 - b. Other: To be determined by Architect
 2. Uninsulated plastic piping
 - a. Fire Protection: To be determined by Architect
 3. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 4. Equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 1. Equipment and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.

3.11 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests
 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.
 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.13 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

3.14 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include quarterly preventive

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacture's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

END OF SECTION 210100

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.
 - 6. Silicone sealants.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.02 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Advance Products & Systems, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
 - 3. [Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.](#)
- B. Description:

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING (continued):

1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig (137 kPa) minimum.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
4. Pressure Plates: Composite plastic.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.05 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.06 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING (continued):

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 1. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing.
 2. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.
 3. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 4. Use silicone sealant to seal around the outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- or smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07.

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.04 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING (continued):

- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant, to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)** : Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 4 (DN 100)** : Sleeve seal fittings.
 - b. Piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system .
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 4 (DN 100)**: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)**: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Steel pipe sleeves
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**:Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.
 - 6. Concrete Slabs with Water Proof Membrane and Roof Decks: Stack-sleeve fittings.

END OF SECTION 210517

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.
- G. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel or cast brass with concealed hinge.
- B. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
 - a. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, brass type with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, brass type with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, brass type with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, brass type with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 210518

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
 - 2. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
 - 3. Check valves.
 - 4. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
 - 5. NRS gate valves.
 - 6. Trim and drain valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRS: Non-rising stem.
- B. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- C. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
 - 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
 - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
 - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
 - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
 - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
 - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
 - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
 - 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
 - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
 - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
 - a. Indicator posts.
 - b. Valves.
 - 1) Gate valves.
 - 2) Check valves.
 - a) Single check valves.
 - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
- D. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
- G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
- H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
 - 2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; KG/KT-505-W-8 or comparable product by one of the following:
1. [NIBCO INC.](#)
 2. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description:
1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: **175 psig** (1200 kPa).
 3. Body Design: Two piece.
 4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 5. Port Size: Full or standard.
 6. Seats: PTFE.
 7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
 10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
 11. End Connections for Valves **NPS 1** (DN 25) through **NPS 2** (DN 50): Threaded ends.
 12. End Connections for Valves **NPS 2-1/2** (DN 65): Grooved ends.

2.3 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; GD-4765-8N or comparable product by one of the following:
1. [Anvil International, Inc.](#)
 2. [Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
 3. [NIBCO INC.](#)
 4. [Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.](#)
 5. [Victaulic Company.](#)
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: **175 psig** (1200 kPa).
 3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 4. Seat Material: EPDM.
 5. Stem: Stainless steel.
 6. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated.
 7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
 8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
 9. Body Design: Lug,-wafer, or Grooved-end connections.

2.4 CHECK VALVES

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; F-908-W or G-917-W or comparable product by one of the following:
1. [Anvil International, Inc.](#)
 2. [Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
 3. [Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.](#)

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

4. [NIBCO INC.](#)
5. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.](#)
6. [Shurjoint Piping Products.](#)
7. [Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.](#)
8. [Victaulic Company.](#)
9. [Viking Corporation.](#)
10. [Watts Water Technologies, Inc](#)

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.5 **BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES**

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Nibco, Inc.; T-104-0 or comparable product by one of the following:

1. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
2. [NIBCO INC.](#)

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
4. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
5. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
6. Stem: Bronze or brass.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Threaded.

2.6 **IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES**

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mueller Co.;R-2360-6 or comparable product by one of the following:

1. [Hammond Valve.](#)
2. [Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
3. [Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.](#)
4. [NIBCO INC.](#)
5. [Victaulic Company.](#)
6. [Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

B. Description:

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged or Grooved.

2.7 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mueller Co.; I-2360 or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
2. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
3. NIBCO INC.
4. Victaulic Company.

- B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged.

2.8 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball Valves:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
- c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- d. NIBCO INC.
- e. Potter Roemer.
- f. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- h. Victaulic Company.
- i. Watts Water Technologies, Inc

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
- b. Body Design: Two piece.
- c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

- d. Port size: Full or standard.
- e. Seats: PTFE.
- f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- h. Actuator: Handlever.
- i. End Connections for Valves **NPS 1 (DN 25)** through **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)**: Threaded ends.

B. Angle Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Fire Protection Products, Inc.](#)
 - b. [NIBCO INC.](#)
 - c. [United Brass Works, Inc.](#)
- 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
 - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - c. Ends: Threaded.
 - d. Stem: Bronze.
 - e. Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [NIBCO INC.](#)
 - b. [United Brass Works, Inc.](#)
- 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: **175 psig (1200 kPa)**.
 - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - c. Ends: Threaded.
 - d. Stem: Bronze.
 - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
 - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open, to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
 - 1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
 - 2. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
 - 3. Section 211339 "Foam-Water Systems" for application of valves in AFFF piping.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.
- H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
- I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 210523

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Fastener systems.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE / SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: Copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with intumed lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with intumed lips.
4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.

2.05 FASTENER SYSTEMS

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.06 **EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.07 **MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and non-metallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Non-staining, non-corrosive, and non-gaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 **APPLICATION**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.

3.02 **HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36 / A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal strut systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
 1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on piping. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees. Secure shield to pipe on both ends with stainless steel bands.
 2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.

3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches (40 mm)**.

3.06 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
 - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600)** if little or no insulation is required.
 - 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600)**.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- K. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
- M. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529

SECTION 210548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason Super W or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
 - 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
 - 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
 - 5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.

2.02 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

- A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason ND or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.

SECTION 210548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
(continued):

- b. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.](#)
- 2. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
- 3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 **EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 **VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION**

- A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 210548.13

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Ceiling marker labels.
 - 3. Warning signs and labels.
 - 4. Pipe labels.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Red.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and propor-

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- tionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label content. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 CEILING MARKER LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Clear.
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- F. Label Content: Include either the equipment tag identifier or a clear description of the concealed component, along with the system or service abbreviation. Label content shall match identifiers shown on Drawings or be descriptive enough for field recognition and maintenance access.
 1. System of Service Abbreviations: "FP".
 2. Components: "VALVE, FLOW SWITCH".

2.03 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

2.04 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- C. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.
- D. Pipe-Label Colors:
 - 1. Background Color: Red.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.

2.05 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** letters for piping-system abbreviation and **1/2-inch (13-mm)** numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Aluminum, **0.032 inch (0.8 mm)** thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or S-hook.
 - 3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
 - 4. Letter Color: White.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on **8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4)** bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.06 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: Approximately **4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm)**.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 CEILING MARKER LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply labels for each concealed major item of fire suppression equipment or component requiring service or maintenance.
- B. Align labels neatly, parallel to ceiling edges or panel orientation.
- C. Apply after ceiling installation and verification of concealed item locations.
- D. Do not install labels on surfaces subject to frequent replacement or repainting without coordination.
- E. Locate ceiling marker labels where accessible and visible.
- F. Application Locations:
 - 1. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings (ACT):
 - a. Apply label to the face of the ceiling grid tee directly adjacent to or centered over the concealed item.
 - b. If grid location is not feasible, affix to accessible tile surface, avoiding any tile likely to be replaced or removed.
 - 2. Gypsum Board or Hard-Lid Ceilings with Access Panels:
 - a. Apply label directly to the surface of the access panel.
 - b. Label shall be centered, upright, and clearly legible from floor level.
 - 3. Exposed Ceilings or Open Structures:
 - a. Apply label to the nearest permanent building surface or equipment mounting plate visible from below.
 - b. If no surface is available, affix to suspended tag or placard mounted below the item.
 - 4. Multiple Components at Single Access Location:

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- a. Use a single label listing all concealed components above the ceiling at that location, aligned vertically or in column format.
- b. Use consistent labeling format and spacing.

3.05 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.
 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** along each run. Reduce intervals to **25 feet (7.6 m)** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.

3.06 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Fire-Suppression Standpipe: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
 - b. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
 - c. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
 - d. Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.

3.07 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 210553

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following fire-suppression systems, assemblies, and equipment:
 - 1. Water-based fire-suppression systems.
 - 2. Fire-extinguishing systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Division 01.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Division 01.
- C. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fire-suppression testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.
- C. Construction Checklists: Material, installation, and performance test checklists for systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components to be part of the Cx process and according to requirements in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements".
 - 1. Facility fire-suppression water distribution piping outside the building, including the following:
 - a. Fire-suppression water piping, fittings, and specialties outside the building.
 - b. Hydrants and fire-department connections.
 - c. Fire-alarm devices.
 - d. Meters and meter pits.
 - e. Outdoor water-storage tanks.
 - f. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - g. Meters and gages.
 - h. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - i. Hangers and supports.
 - j. Heat tracing.
 - k. Vibration isolation.
 - l. Identification.
 - m. Insulation.
 - 2. Fire-suppression sprinkler systems, including the following:

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- a. Wet-pipe sprinkler piping, fittings, sprinklers, and specialties.
 - b. Pre-action, deluge sprinkler piping, fittings, sprinklers, and specialties.
 - c. Compressed-air piping, compressors, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - d. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - e. Meters and gages.
 - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - g. Hangers and supports.
 - h. Heat tracing.
 - i. Vibration isolation.
 - j. Identification.
 - k. Insulation.
- 3. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems, including the following:
 - a. Piping, fittings, outlets, and specialties.
 - b. Storage tanks, manifolds, mounting devices, controls, and accessories.
 - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - d. Meters and gages.
 - e. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - f. Hangers and supports.
 - g. Vibration isolation.
 - h. Identification.
 - i. Insulation.
- D. Test equipment and instrumentation list, identifying the following:
 - 1. Equipment/instrument identification number.
 - 2. Planned Cx application or use.
 - 3. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - 4. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
 - 5. Equipment manufacturers' proprietary instrumentation and tools. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
 - a. Instrument or tool identification number.
 - b. Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
 - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Suppression Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform fire-suppression construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
 - 1. Journey level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of fire-suppression system, electrical concepts, and building operations.
 - 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Clean-Agent Fire-Suppression Systems Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform clean-agent fire-suppression system construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in mechanical systems, fire-suppression systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing fire-suppression systems in the clean-agent fire-suppression systems industry. Generally, required knowledge includes clean-agent fire-suppression systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of fire-suppression system equipment, assemblies, and systems.
 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration:
1. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
 2. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
 3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
 4. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, shall comply with the following:
 - a. Be calibrated by manufacturer with current calibration tags permanently affixed.
 - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - c. Fire-suppression system proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for fire-suppression systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
1. Water-based fire-suppression systems, including the following:
 - a. Facility fire-suppression water-service piping.
 - b. Wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - c. Dry-pipe sprinkler systems.
 2. Fire-extinguishing systems, including the following:
 - a. Clean-agent extinguishing systems.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

- A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

- B. Return draft construction checklist review comments within 10 days of receipt.
- C. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
- D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

3.03 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that fire-suppression systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals.
- B. Certify that fire-suppression systems instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

3.04 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

- A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
 - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
 - 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
 - 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the fire-suppression system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.05 Cx TESTS COMMON TO FIRE-SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

- A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.
- D. Comply with construction checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Division 21 Sections specifying fire-suppression systems and equipment.
- E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

1. Construction checklist verification tests.
2. Construction checklist verification test demonstrations.
3. Cx tests.
4. Cx test demonstrations.

F. Vibration Isolation in Fire-Suppression Systems:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for vibration control devices specified in Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
2. Components to Be Tested:
 - a. Vibration isolation control devices in water-based fire-suppression systems.
 - b. Structural systems.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate effectiveness of vibration isolation control devices.
4. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at three locations designated by Owner's witness while the isolated equipment operates.
5. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at three locations designated by Owner's witness at the following operating conditions:
 - a. Maximum speed.
 - b. Minimum speed.
 - c. Critical speed.
6. Acceptance Criteria: Structure-borne vibration not to exceed specified performance.

G. Supervision of Fire-Protection Valves in Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for valves specified in the Sections listed below:
 - a. Section 210523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire Protection Piping."
 - b. Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
 - c. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."
 - d. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."
 - e. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."
 - f. Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."
2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested:
 - a. Supervised valves in water-based fire-suppression systems.
 - b. Division 28 fire-detection and -alarm systems.
3. Test Purpose: Verify generation of supervisory alarm at the fire-alarm control panel in response to activation of valve supervision device or tamper switch.
4. Test Conditions:
 - a. Fire-alarm system operating in normal, automatic mode.
 - b. Activate valve supervision devices and tamper switches, one at a time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Activation of valve supervision device or tamper switch generates supervisory alarm at fire-alarm control panel.

3.06 Cx TESTS FOR DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER PIPING, FITTINGS, SPRINKLERS, AND SPECIALTIES.

A. Air Compressor Run Time:

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified in Section 211316 "Dry-Piping Sprinkler Systems."
2. Systems and Equipment to Be Tested:
 - a. Air compressors in fire-suppression systems.
 - b. Associated compressed air piping, valves, and appurtenances.
 - c. Associated air pressure controllers.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate air compressor run time and number of compressor starts.
4. Test Conditions:
 - a. Keep compressed air and associated sprinkler piping openings closed during test.
 - b. For systems with multiple compressors, lock out compressor motors on all but one compressor. Repeat test for each compressor in turn.
 - c. Record number of air compressor motor starts during a 14-day period.
 - d. Record air compressor motor run time during the same 14-day period.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Number of compressor motor starts during test period shall not exceed 20.
 - b. Compressor motor run time during test period shall not exceed 60 minutes.

3.07 Cx TESTS FOR CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS:

A. Clean-Agent Concentration in Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing System:

1. Prerequisites:
 - a. Acceptance of results of construction checklists for Section 212200 "Clean-Agent Fire-Extinguishing Systems."
 - b. Acceptance of construction checklists specified in Division 23 for systems and equipment serving the protected space.
 - c. Partitions, ceilings, doors, and other openings complete in the vicinity of the protected space.
2. Systems and Equipment to Be Tested:
 - a. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.
 - b. HVAC system protected space isolation equipment.
 - c. Protected space enclosure.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate initial and final clean-agent concentration in the protected space following carbon-dioxide release.
4. Test Conditions:
 - a. HVAC systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
 - b. Fire-detection and -alarm systems operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
 - c. Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system charged and operating in normal, occupied, automatic control.
 - d. Protected space air temperature is 70 deg F (21 deg C).
 - e. Create a fire-alarm event in the clean-agent protected space, resulting in discharge of clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
 - f. Measure and record clean-agent concentration at four locations selected by the CxA when the clean agent is completely dispersed and at the end of holding time.
5. Acceptance Criteria: Clean-agent concentration is no less than 34 percent concentration by volume at 70 deg F (21 deg C).

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

END OF SECTION 210800

SECTION 210800 - COMMISSIONING OF FIRE SUPPRESSION (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 211119 - FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Yard-type fire-department connections.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.; 15 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - 2. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - 3. Potter Roemer.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, freestanding.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa) minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- F. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.
- I. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- K. Sleeve: Brass.

SECTION 211119 - FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS (continued):

- L. Sleeve Height: 18 inches (460 mm).
- M. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
- N. Finish, Including Sleeve: Polished chrome plated.
- O. Outlet Size: NPS 4 (DN 100).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support. Comply with requirements for concrete in Division 03.
- B. Install two protective pipe bollards around each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Division 05.
- C. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
 - 2. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
 - 3. Specialty valves.
 - 4. Sprinklers.
 - 5. Alarm devices.
 - 6. Manual control stations.
 - 7. Control panels.
 - 8. Pressure gages.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard **175 psig (1200 kPa)**, but not higher than **250 psig (1725 kPa)**.
- B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of **175-psig (1200-kPa)** maximum.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic, etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, service mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or circuits, hanger locations, and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.
 - 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed engineer.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Design Data:
 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- B. Field Test Reports:
 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Sprinklers and Piping: Provide allowance equal to 10% of sprinkler and piping on project to be located by Engineer or AHJ as building components are installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with competing systems.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.
- B. Deluge Sprinkler System: Open sprinklers are attached to piping connected to water supply through deluge valve. Fire-detection system, in same area as sprinklers, opens valve. Water flows into piping system and discharges from attached sprinklers when valve opens.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13.
 - 2. NFPA 13R.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- C. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- D. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the wet-pipe sprinkler systems based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.
 - 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records: As indicated on the Drawings.
 - 2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 psi, measured at the base of the riser at design system demand.
 - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As indicated on the Drawings.
 - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As indicated on the Drawings.
 - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
 - 5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: As indicated on the Drawings.

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Standard-Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, Schedule 10 in **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in **NPS 6 to NPS 10 (DN 150 to DN 250)**, plain end.
- C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- D. Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
 - 3. Uncoated Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.04 COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. DecoShield Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Grice Engineering, Inc.
- B. Description: System of support brackets and covers made to protect sprinkler piping.
- C. Brackets: Glass-reinforced nylon.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- D. Covers: Extruded-PVC sections of length, shape, and size required for size and routing of CPVC piping.

2.05 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
 - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
 - 2. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Alarm Valves:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; AV-1-300 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 193.
 - 3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 - 4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 - 5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
 - 6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Deluge Valves:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; DV-5 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - c. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 260.
 - 3. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
 - 4. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 - 5. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gage to read diaphragm-chamber pressure and manual control station for manual operation of deluge valve, and connection for actuation device.
- H. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; AD-2 or comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.](#)
2. Standard: UL 1726.
 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 5. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
 6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.06 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.](#)
 - b. [Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.](#)
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

C. Branch Line Testers:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Fire-End & Croker Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Potter Roemer.](#)
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig (1200 kPa).
4. Body Material: Brass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - b. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fivalco Inc.
 - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
 - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.07 SPRINKLERS (COMMERCIAL)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Victaulic Company.
4. Viking Corporation.

B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** maximum.

D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.

E. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: **250-psig (1725-kPa)** minimum.

F. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
3. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
4. Characteristics: Nominal **1/2-inch (12.7-mm)** orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

G. Open Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element Removed: UL 199.

1. Nominal Orifice: **17/32 inch (13.5 mm)** with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2.

H. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- I. Special Coatings: Wax, lead, and corrosion-resistant paint.
- J. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
- K. Sprinkler Guards:
 - 1. Standard: UL 199.
 - 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.08 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Flow Indicators:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - c. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 346.
 - 3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
 - 4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
 - 5. Type: Paddle operated.
 - 6. Pressure Rating: **250 psig (1725 kPa).**
 - 7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.
- C. Pressure Switches:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 346.
 - 3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- D. Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - 2. Standard: UL 346.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.09 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.10 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- D. Panels Components:
 1. Power supply.
 2. Battery charger.
 3. Standby batteries.
 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 6. Lamp test facility.
 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 8. Rectifier.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. **AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.**
 2. **Ashcroft, Inc.**
 3. **WIKA Instrument Corporation.**
- B. Standard: UL 393.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig (0- to 1725-kPa) minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

3.03 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water supply.

3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548.14 "Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)** and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- M. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- N. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.05 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- I. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- K. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF COVER SYSTEM FOR SPRINKLER PIPING

- A. Install cover system, brackets, and cover components for sprinkler piping according to manufacturer's "Installation Manual" and NFPA 13 or NFPA 13R for supports.

3.07 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
 - 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

3.08 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.
- D. Install sprinklers per manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

3.13 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- B. CPVC pipe, Schedule 40 CPVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints may be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**, shall be the following:
 - 1. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and larger, shall be the following:
 - 1. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- F. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- G. High-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65 100) and larger**, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.14 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
 - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
 - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
 - 3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
 - 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated.
 - 5. Deluge-Sprinkler Systems: Upright and pendent, open sprinklers.
 - 6. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated, Attic sprinklers, Combustible concealed space sprinklers, and Institutional space sprinklers.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
 - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
 - 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Painted white, with white escutcheon.
 - 3. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
 - 4. Institutional Sprinklers: Grey or white painted to match adjacent surface. Escutcheon shall match sprinkler finish.
 - 5. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Painted white in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
 - 2. Specialty valves.
 - 3. Sprinkler specialty pipe fittings.
 - 4. Sprinklers.
 - 5. Alarm devices.
 - 6. Manual control stations.
 - 7. Control panels.
 - 8. Pressure gages.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of **175-psig (1200-kPa)** maximum.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic, etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, service mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or circuits, hanger locations, and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.
 - 1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed engineer.
 - 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Design Data:
 - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- B. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- C. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
 - 2. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Sprinklers and Piping: Provide allowance equal to 10% of sprinkler and piping on project to be located by Engineer or AHJ as building components are installed to provide adequate coverage around obstructions or to otherwise coordinate with competing systems.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air. Opening of sprinklers releases compressed air and permits water pressure to open dry-pipe valve. Water then flows into piping and discharges from opened sprinklers.
- B. Combined Dry-Pipe and Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air. Fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, actuates tripping devices that open dry-pipe valve without loss of air pressure and actuates fire alarm. Water discharges from opened sprinklers.
- C. Single-Interlock Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing low-pressure air. Actuation of fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, opens deluge valve, permitting water to flow into sprinkler piping and to discharge from opened sprinklers.
- D. Double-Interlock Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing low-pressure air. Actuation of a fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, opens deluge valve, permitting water to flow into sprinkler piping. A closed solenoid valve in the sprinkler piping is opened by another fire-detection device; water will then discharge from opened sprinklers.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
 - 1. NFPA 13.
- B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum working pressure.
- C. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the wet-pipe sprinkler systems based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.
 - 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records: As indicated on the Drawings.
- D. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10psi, measured at the base of the riser at design system demand.
 - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As indicated on the Drawings.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As indicated on the Drawings.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: As indicated on the Drawings.

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Thinwall Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- E. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- H. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 2. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
 3. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.04 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

F. Dry-Pipe Valves:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; DPV-1 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 260.
3. Design: Differential-pressure type.
4. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - a. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; AMD-2 (for systems up to 500 gallons) and AMD-1 (for systems greater than 500 gallons) or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - 2) Viking Corporation.
6. Standard: UL 260.
7. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
8. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with **14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa)** adjustable range, and **175-psig (1200-kPa)** outlet pressure.
9. Air Compressor:
 - a. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide General Air Products, Inc.; OLT or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) Gast Manufacturing Inc.
 - 2) Viking Corporation.
 - b. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - c. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - d. Power: As indicated on Drawings.

G. Deluge Valves:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; DV-5 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 260.
3. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
4. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gages, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Dry, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include dry, pilot-line actuator; air- and water-pressure gages; low-air-pressure warning switch; air relief valve; and actuation device. Dry, pilot-line actuator includes cast-iron, operated, diaphragm-type valve with resilient facing plate, resilient diaphragm, and replaceable bronze seat. Valve includes threaded water and air inlets and water outlet. Loss of air pressure on dry, pilot-line side allows pilot-line actuator to open and causes deluge valve to open immediately.
6. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; AMD-2 (for systems up to 500 gallons) and AMD-1 (for systems greater than 500 gallons) or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) **Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.**
 - 2) **Viking Corporation.**
 - b. Standard: UL 260.
 - c. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
 - d. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with **14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa)** adjustable range, and **175-psig (1200-kPa)** outlet pressure.
7. Air Compressor:
- a. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide General Air Products, Inc.; OLT or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) **Gast Manufacturing Inc.**
 - 2) **Viking Corporation.**
 8. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 9. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 10. Power: As indicated on Drawings.
 11. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

H. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tyco Fire & Building Products LP; AD-2 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.**
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)**.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.05 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.

B. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Standard: UL 213.
2. Pressure Rating: **175-psig (1200-kPa)** minimum.
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: **175-psig** (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

D. Branch Line Testers:

1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Pressure Rating: **175-psig** (1200-kPa) minimum.
3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

E. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
 - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
 - c. Potter Roemer.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: **175-psig** (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fivalco Inc.
 - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
 - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
3. Pressure Rating: **175-psig** (1200-kPa) minimum.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.06 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Viking Corporation.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) maximum.
- D. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig (1200-kPa) minimum.
- E. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum.
- F. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 2. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 - 3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- G. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted.
- H. Special Coatings: Wax, lead, and corrosion-resistant paint.
- I. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
- J. Sprinkler Guards:
 - 1. Standard: UL 199.
 - 2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.07 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Pressure Switches:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
 - d. Viking Corporation.
 - 2. Standard: UL 346.
 - 3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 - 4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 - 5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- C. Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
 - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
 - 2. Standard: UL 346.
 - 3. Type: Electrically supervised.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

2.08 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.09 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- B. Manual Control Stations: Electric operation, metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Manual Control Stations: Hydraulic operation, with union, **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- D. Panels Components:
 1. Power supply.
 2. Battery charger.
 3. Standby batteries.
 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 6. Lamp test facility.
 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 8. Rectifier.

2.10 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
 2. Ashcroft, Inc.
 3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch (90- to 115-mm) diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig (0- to 1725-kPa) minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for exterior piping.
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Section 211100 "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."

3.03 WATER-SUPPLY CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to building's interior water-distribution piping. Comply with requirements for interior piping in Division 22
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-distribution piping.

3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- K. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
 - 1. Pressure gages and controls.
 - 2. Electrical power system.
 - 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- L. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- M. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13. In seismic-rated areas, refer to Section 210548.14 "Seismic Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment."
- N. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each stand-pipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)** and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- O. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- P. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping, air-pressure maintenance devices, and air compressors.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.05 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.06 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install dry-pipe and deluge valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
 - b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with **14- to 60-psig (95- to 410-kPa)** adjustable range; and **175-psig (1200-kPa)** maximum inlet pressure.
 - c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

3.07 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Start and run air compressors.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- B. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.
- C. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**, shall be the following:

SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, **NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150)**, shall be the following:
 1. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry recessed and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
 3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, dry pendent sprinklers; and dry sidewall sprinklers as indicated.
 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
 3. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211316

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 22 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for plumbing systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. ASHRAE
 - a. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential Buildings
 - 2. ASME
 - a. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - 2019
 - 1) Section IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
 - 2) Section VIII Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels
 - 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 - 4. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 30A Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages - 2021
 - b. NFPA 52 Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code – 2019
 - c. NFPA 150 Standard on Fire and Life Safety in Animal Housing Facilities – 2019
 - 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Accessibility Code
 - 6. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 - 7. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-34 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Mechanical Systems
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual**

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

email addresses for H2Engineering personnel. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 9. Electrical Modifications:
 - a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Plumbing systems at the time of design.
 - b. If Plumbing equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including,

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.

- c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.
- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- D. Submittal Review Fees:
 1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.13 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.15 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.16 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

1.17 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.

- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.
- E. Interruption of Service: Before any existing equipment or system is shut down for disconnecting or tie-ins, coordinate with Engineer and Owner regarding acceptable dates and times for this Work to be performed. Work shall be performed at the time best suited for the Owner, which typically is either on weekends, holidays, and/or after normal working hours. Services shall be restored the same day unless prior arrangements are made. All overtime or premium costs associated with this Work shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
 - 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 - 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 - 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 - 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
 - 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 - 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

3.07 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FINISHES, CARPET, AND FURNISHING

- A. Protect existing finishes, carpet, casework, furnishing, and other building components against damage and soiling throughout construction activities. Take care during construction not to damage existing items. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing damaged material or restoring damaged materials to the Owner's satisfaction.
- B. When permitted by Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during construction and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.
- C. Furniture may be relocated during construction and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.
- D. Means and methods for protection are the responsibility of the Contractor. Utilize plywood, polyethylene sheeting, dust cloths, and other means as required.

3.08 UTILITY SERVICES AND PLUMBING SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and plumbing systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.

3.09 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 - 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.
- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 21. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted otherwise):
 - a. Other: To be determined by Engineer
 - 2. Uninsulated plastic piping
 - 3. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 - 4. Equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - 1. Equipment and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
 - 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.
- E. Paint the following work where concealed from and/or exposed to view:
 - 1. Reuse or Reclaimed Water Supply: Purple

3.11 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.
 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.13 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

3.14 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

END OF SECTION 220100

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR PLUMBING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Power Factor: 0.80.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT (continued):

- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.04 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.
 - 6. Silicone sealants.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: **0.0239-inch (0.6-mm)** minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.02 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. **Advance Products & Systems, Inc.**
 2. **Metraflex Company (The).**
 3. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of **20 psig (137 kPa)** minimum.
 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 4. Pressure Plates: Composite plastic.
 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
- B. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.05 GROUT

- A. Description: Non-shrinking, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.06 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 2. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Use silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07.

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.04 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than **NPS 4 (DN 100)**: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch (25-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than **NPS 4 (DN 100)**: Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.
6. Concrete Slabs with Water Proof Membrane and Roof Decks: Stack-sleeve fittings.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE WAS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.
- B. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING (continued):

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Filled-system thermometers.
 - 2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
 - 3. Thermowells.
 - 4. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 5. Gage attachments.
 - 6. Test plugs.
 - 7. Test-plug kits.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trerice H.O. Co.; V803 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Ashcroft Inc.](#)
 - b. [Miljoco Corporation.](#)
 - c. [Weiss Instruments, Inc.](#)
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
 - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

6. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **deg F (deg C)**.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Stainless steel.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, back for panel mount applications, bottom otherwise; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.02 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Terice H.O. Co.; BX9 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Weiss Instruments, Inc.**
 - b. **Winters Instruments - U.S.**
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; **9-inch (229-mm)** nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **deg F (deg C)**.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.03 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR (copper nicket 90-10).
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES (stainless steel).
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: **NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1 (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: **1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm)**, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.04 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trerice H.O. Co.; 600CB or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum; **4-1/2-inch (114-mm)** nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **psi (kPa)**.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

- B. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Trerice H.O. Co.; 600CB w/ threaded diaphragm and capillary tubing kit or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: type; Solid front, pressure relief; **4-1/2-inch (114-mm)** nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in **psi (kPa)**.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.05 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

2.06 TEST PLUGS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 110 XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)**, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: **500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C)**.
- F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.07 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.; Model 1500XL or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Miljoco Corporation.
 - 2. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with **1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-)** diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least **25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C)**.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with **1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-)** diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least **0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C)**.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with **2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-)** diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least **0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa)**.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of **2 inches (51 mm)** into fluid and in vertical position in piping tees.

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.04 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
 - 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be the following:
 - 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 - 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be the following:

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be the following:
 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.05 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F (Minus 20 to plus 70 deg C).
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F (0 to 150 deg C).

3.06 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
 1. Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 2. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.07 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa).

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
 - 2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
 - 3. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 4. Iron swing check valves.
 - 5. Iron, center-guided check valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
 - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 5. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 5. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For valves **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and smaller.
- I. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Include **2-inch (50-mm)** stem extensions.
 - 2. Extended operating handles of non-thermal conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- J. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Hammond Valve.
 - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - e. NIBCO INC.
 - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

2.03 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.04 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

B. Bronze Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:

- 1. Description:

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
- b. CWP Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 584, bronze.
- e. Ends: Press.
- f. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
- g. Disc: Brass or bronze.

2.05 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. **Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.**
 - b. **Milwaukee Valve Company.**
 - c. **NIBCO INC.**
 - d. **Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.**
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.06 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED, SPRING-LOADED CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. **Milwaukee Valve Company.**
 - b. **Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.**
 - c. **NIBCO INC.**
 - d. **Watts Regulator Co.; A division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.**
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa)**.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: Bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service:
 - a. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Ball valves.
 - b. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Butterfly valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.

SECTION 220523.11 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.

C. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged or threaded.
3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.
4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.
5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged or threaded.
6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged.

3.05 **DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE**

A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded or solder joint ends.
2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:

1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
2. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125, with flanged end connections.
3. Iron, center-guided check valves with globe, metal seat, Class 125, with flanged end connections.

END OF SECTION 220523.11

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
 - 2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
 - 3. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 4. Iron swing check valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
 - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 5. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING (continued):

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 5. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For valves **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and smaller.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece, Safety-Exhaust:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.](#)
 - b. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
 - c. [Hammond Valve.](#)
 - d. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
 - e. [NIBCO INC.](#)
 - f. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: **600 psig (4140 kPa).**
 - c. Body Design: Two piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze, ASTM B 584, Alloy C844.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass, with exhaust vent opening for pneumatic applications.

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING (continued):

- i. Port: Full.

2.03 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa).**
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.04 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: **300 psig (2070 kPa).**
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

B. Bronze Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:

- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
 - b. CWP Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa).**
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 584, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Press.
 - f. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum **200 psig (1380 kPa).**

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING (continued):

- g. Disc: Brass or bronze.

2.05 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 250:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **500 psig** (3450 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING (continued):

- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service:
 - a. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Ball valves.
 - b. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Butterfly valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
- C. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged or threaded.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded.

SECTION 220523.21 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR COMPRESSED AIR PIPING (continued):

5. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged or threaded.
6. For Steel Piping, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged.

3.05 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

A. Pipe **NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:**

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece safety exhaust with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded or solder joint ends.
2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.

B. Pipe **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:**

1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
2. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125, with flanged end connections.
3. Iron, center-guided check valves with globe, metal seat, Class 125, with flanged end connections.

3.06 HIGH-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 TO 200 PSIG (1035 TO 1380 kPa))

A. Pipe **NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:**

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece safety exhaust with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded or solder joint ends.
2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.

B. Pipe **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:**

1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
2. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 250, with flanged end connections.

END OF SECTION 220523.21

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
 - 2. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 3. Iron swing check valves.
 - 4. Iron gate valves.
 - 5. Bronze globe valves.
 - 6. Iron globe valves.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- D. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
 - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
 - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 4. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 5. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 4. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 - 5. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building service piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves **NPS 8 (DN 200)** and larger.
 - 2. Handlever: For valves **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and smaller.
- I. Valves in Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Include **2-inch (50-mm)** stem extensions.
 - 2. Extended operating handles of non-thermal conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- J. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

- c. [Hammond Valve.](#)
- d. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- e. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- f. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110 or MSS-145.
- b. CWP Rating: **600 psig** (4140 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Two piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

2.03 **BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES**

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc, Class 150:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
- b. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- c. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- d. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
- b. CWP Rating: **300 psig** (2070 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
- f. Disc: PTFE.

2.04 **IRON SWING CHECK VALVES**

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.](#)
- b. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
- c. [NIBCO INC.](#)
- d. [Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: **200 psig** (1380 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.05 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control, Class 125:

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa).**
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged or threaded. See valve schedule articles.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed exterior lever and weight.

2.06 IRON GATE VALVES

A. Class 125, OS&Y, Iron Gate Valves:

- 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
 - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-70, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: **200 psig (1380 kPa).**
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge.
 - g. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.07 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
 - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.08 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :
 - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service: Globe valves.
 - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- C. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- D. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged or threaded.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Flanged or threaded.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Flanged.

SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING (continued):

3.05 SANITARY-WASTE AND STORM-DRAINAGE VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller:

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim. Provide with threaded or solder joint ends.
2. Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc, Class 150, with threaded joint ends.
3. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, nonmetallic disc.

B. Pipe **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger:

1. Iron Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
2. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and weight.
3. Iron Gate Valves: Class 125, OS&Y.
4. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125

END OF SECTION 220523.31

**SECTION 220523.31 - GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR SANITARY WASTE AND STORM DRAINAGE
PIPING (continued):**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Fastener systems.
 - 5. Pipe stands.
 - 6. Pipe-positioning systems.
 - 7. Insulation couplings.
 - 8. Equipment supports.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Pipe stands.
 - 4. Insulation couplings.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Division 01 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.**

2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Flex-Strut Inc.](#)
 - c. [Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.](#)
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized

2.05 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.06 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Single base unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 3. Hardware: Galvanized steel or polycarbonate.
 4. Accessories: Protection pads.
- C. Low-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Single base with vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane protection.
 2. Base: Single, vulcanized rubber, molded polypropylene, or polycarbonate.
 3. Vertical Members: Two galvanized-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch (12-mm) rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: Adjustable horizontal, galvanized-steel pipe support channels.
 5. Pipe Supports: Roller, Strut clamps, or Clevis hanger.
 6. Hardware: Stainless steel.
 7. Accessories: Protection pads.
 8. Height: 12 inches (300 mm) above roof.
- D. High-Profile, Single-Base, Single-Pipe Stand:
 1. Description: Single base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 2. Base: Single vulcanized rubber or molded polypropylene.
 3. Vertical Members: Two galvanized-steel, continuous-thread, 1/2-inch (12-mm) rods.
 4. Horizontal Member: One adjustable-height, galvanized-steel, pipe-support slotted channel or plate.
 5. Pipe Supports: Roller.
 6. Hardware: Stainless steel.
 7. Accessories: Protection pads, 1/2-inch (12-mm), continuous-thread, stainless-steel rod.
 8. Height: 36 inches (900 mm) above roof.
- E. High-Profile, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Vertical Members: Two or more, galvanized-steel channels.
3. Horizontal Members: One or more, adjustable-height, galvanized-steel pipe support.
4. Pipe Supports: Clevis hanger.
5. Hardware: Stainless steel.
6. Accessories: Protection pads, **1/2-inch (12-mm)**, continuous-thread rod.
7. Height: **36 inches (900 mm)** above roof.

2.07 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.08 INSULATION COUPLINGS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.**; Figure 7897 (flexible elastomeric insulation) / Figure 7899 (mineral fiber insulation) or a comparable product by one of the following:
 1. **Eaton.**
 2. **Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.**
- B. Description: Insulation coupling designed to support insulated pipes and for use with metal framing system mounted clamps and either flexible elastomeric or mineral fiber insulation.
- C. Material: Molded with high-strength thermoplastic.
- D. UL Classified 2043 for use in plenum and air handling systems.
- E. Temperature Rating: **-60 deg F to +225 deg F.**

2.09 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.10 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).**
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 2. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.

3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than **4 inches (100 mm)** thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
- F. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Install insulation couplings for pipes mounted to metal framing systems based on pipe size and insulation material. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on metal framing system.
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: For pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Smaller
 - b. Mineral Fiber Insulation: For pipe **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Smaller
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on piping not using insulation couplings. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees. Secure shield to pipe on both ends with stainless steel bands.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. **NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.**
 - b. **NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
 - c. **NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.**
 - d. **NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.**

3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches (40 mm)**.

3.06 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600)** if little or no insulation is required.
 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600)**.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 3. Spring hangers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason Super W or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
- 2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
- 3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
- 4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
- 5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.

2.02 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason HD or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Mason Industries, Inc.**
 - c. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.03 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason HS-B or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Mason Industries, Inc.**
 - c. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 220548.13

SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Ceiling marker labels.
 - 3. Warning signs and labels.
 - 4. Pipe labels.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets.
 - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label content. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 CEILING MARKER LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Clear.
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- F. Label Content: Include either the equipment tag identifier or a clear description of the concealed component, along with the system or service abbreviation. Label content shall match identifiers shown on Drawings or be descriptive enough for field recognition and maintenance access.
 - 1. System of Service Abbreviations: "CWS, HWS, HWR, SAN, GAS, CA, VAC".
 - 2. Components: "VALVE, CIRCUIT SETTER".

2.03 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.04 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.05 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** letters for piping system abbreviation and **1/2-inch (13-mm)** numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, **0.032-inch (0.8-mm)** minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on **8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4)** bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.06 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: Approximately **4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm)**.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 CEILING MARKER LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply labels for each concealed major item of plumbing equipment or component requiring service or maintenance.
- B. Align labels neatly, parallel to ceiling edges or panel orientation.
- C. Apply after ceiling installation and verification of concealed item locations.
- D. Do not install labels on surfaces subject to frequent replacement or repainting without coordination.
- E. Locate ceiling marker labels where accessible and visible.
- F. Application Locations:
 - 1. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings (ACT):
 - a. Apply label to the face of the ceiling grid tee directly adjacent to or centered over the concealed item.
 - b. If grid location is not feasible, affix to accessible tile surface, avoiding any tile likely to be replaced or removed.
 - 2. Gypsum Board or Hard-Lid Ceilings with Access Panels:
 - a. Apply label directly to the surface of the access panel.
 - b. Label shall be centered, upright, and clearly legible from floor level.
 - 3. Exposed Ceilings or Open Structures:
 - a. Apply label to the nearest permanent building surface or equipment mounting plate visible from below.
 - b. If no surface is available, affix to suspended tag or placard mounted below the item.
 - 4. Multiple Components at Single Access Location:
 - a. Use a single label listing all concealed components above the ceiling at that location, aligned vertically or in column format.
 - b. Use consistent labeling format and spacing.

3.05 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** along each run. Reduce intervals to **25 feet (7.6 m)** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 2. High-Pressure Compressed Air Piping:
 - a. Background: Safety blue.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 3. Domestic Water Piping
 - a. Background: Safety green.
 - b. Letter Colors: White.
 4. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Safety black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

3.06 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, round.
 - b. Hot Water: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, round.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, round.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, round.
 - e. Sanitary Waste: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, round.
 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 - c. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.
 - d. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Natural.

3.07 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing equipment:
 - 1. Domestic water storage tanks.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections and access panels.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semi-rigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C612, Type IB. Nominal density is **2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m)** or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at **100 deg F (55 deg C)** is **0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K)** or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.02 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

- d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.](#)
- 2. Adhesive: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
- 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.03 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Mastics shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
 - 1. [Products:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.](#)
 - b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.](#)
 - d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.](#)
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM 96, greater than **1.0 perm** (0.66 metric perms) at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F** (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 - 4. Color: White.

2.04 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

2.05 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.

2.06 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 1. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 2. Thickness: **11.5 mils (0.29 mm)**.
 3. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm)** in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: **40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm)** in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.07 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide with wing seal.
 2. Aluminum: **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, **0.020 inch (0.51 mm)** thick, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide with wing seal.
 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, **0.030 inch (0.76 mm)** thick by **2 inches (50 mm)** square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, **0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-)** diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from **0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-)** thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** in diameter.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

- 1) [AGM Industries, Inc.; RC 150.](#)
- 2) [GEMCO; R-150.](#)
- 3) [Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.](#)
- 4) [Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.](#)

- b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal **3/4-inch-** (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

2.08 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: **0.040 inch** (1.0 mm) thick, minimum **1 by 1 inch** (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to **ASTM B209** (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- E. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- F. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- G. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

- H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **2 inches (50 mm)** o.c.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- M. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe, and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
 - 2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
 - 3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
 - 4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
 - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
 - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
 - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is **3 inches (75 mm)** from insulation end joints, and **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. in both directions.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
 - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
 - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
6. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least **3 inches (75 mm)**.
7. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
8. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
9. Apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.

3.05 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. and at end joints.

3.06 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Domestic hot-water storage tank insulation shall be the following:
 1. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: Of thickness to provide an R-value of 12.5.

3.07 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 1. None.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to **48 Inches (1200 mm)** in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to **72 Inches (1800 mm)**:
 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: **0.016 inch (0.41 mm)** thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than **48 Inches (1200 mm)** in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than **72 Inches (1800 mm)**:
 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with **1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-)** Deep Corrugations: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.

3.08 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

SECTION 220716.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER EQUIPMENT (continued):

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Equipment, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
- D. Equipment, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
- E. Equipment, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed with 1-1/4-Inch- (32-mm-) Deep Corrugations: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 220716.12

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic hot-water piping.
2. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation where applicable.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing, where applicable.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.**
 - 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C552, Type I.
 - 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C552, Type III.
 - 4. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C552, Type II, Class 1.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

5. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C552, Type II, Class 2.
6. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.

G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok HP.
 - b. Owens Corning; SSL II with ASJ Max Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
2. Type I, **850 Deg F (454 Deg C)** Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article. UL listed and labeled for installation over PVC and other polymer pipes within a plenum.

2.02 **INSULATING CEMENTS**

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.03 **ADHESIVES**

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of **minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C)**.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.04 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than **1.0 perm** (0.66 metric perms) at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F** (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Color: White.

2.05 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products:
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

- b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.](#)
 - d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.](#)
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F** (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
 5. Color: White or gray.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.](#)
 - b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.](#)
 - d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.](#)
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F** (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 5. Color: Aluminum.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.](#)
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F** (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 5. Color: White.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.06 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

2.07 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately **2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m)** with a thread count of **10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm)** for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

2.09 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal.
- B. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Above Ambient Systems:
 - 1. Where mastic is indicated provide breather mastic.
 - 2. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

4. Cleanouts.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least **2 inches (50 mm)** below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches (50 mm)**.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 1. Provide factory applied ASJ-SSL jacket.
 2. Create a water stop between insulation and pipe by brushing vapor barrier mastic on pipe around circumference of pipe every 3 feet.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Elbows, Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 1. Provide insulation without factory applied jacket.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. Provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with insulating cement.
7. Secure mitered sections or segmented insulation with wire or bands.
8. Cover pipe fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties and any segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and install field-applied glass-cloth jacket.
9. Apply vapor-barrier mastic at exposed ends of insulation at pipe flanges, unions, and fittings.
10. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Provide factory applied ASJ-SSL jacket.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges, Fittings, Elbows, Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Insulate pipe elbows and tee fittings using preformed fitting insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece.
2. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

- Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with insulating cement.
3. Insulate strainers, valves, and other pipe specialties using preformed fitting insulation. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation. Secure mitered sections with wire or bands.
 4. Arrange valve insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 5. In concealed locations install fitted PVC cover over preformed fitting insulation. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 6. Cover pipe fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties in exposed locations and any segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and install field-applied glass-cloth jacket.
 7. Apply breather mastic at exposed ends of insulation at pipe flanges, unions, and fittings.
 8. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulation Installation on Instrument Connections:

1. Install insulation on instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes.
2. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with mastic.
3. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.07 **FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION**

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two **0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-)** thick coats of mastic.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
 4. Finish to achieve smooth, uniform finish.
- B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. and at end joints.
1. Do not install metal jacket over glass-cloth jacket.

3.08 **FINISHES**

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below. Color per schedule below.
1. Semi-gloss Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, semi-gloss, latex-emulsion size.
 2. Paint exposed piping without field applied metal jacket.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

- C. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
 - 1. White.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.09 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
 - 1. **NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)** and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1-1/2 inch (38 mm)** thick.
 - 2. **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)** and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1-1/2 inch (38 mm)** thick.

3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: **2 inches (50 mm)** thick.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: **0.016 inch (0.41 mm)** thick.
- E. Exposed fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties:
 - 1. Glass cloth jacket.

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 220719.12

SECTION 220719.12 - INSULATION FOR DOMESTIC HOT-WATER PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 2. Floor drains, traps, and drain piping receiving condensate and equipment drain water below 60 deg F.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation where applicable.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing, where applicable.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

2.02 ADHESIVES

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacellular LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.03 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).**
 - 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.04 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M)**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: **2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-)** thick polysurlyn.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

- 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.05 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide with wing seal.

B. Wire: **0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.**

2.06 PLENUM FIRE WRAP

- A. Material: High-temperature fiber blanket thermal insulation encapsulated in fiberglass-reinforced aluminum foil.
- B. Density: 6 pcf.
- C. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Below Ambient Systems:
 - 1. Provide continuous vapor barrier; seal joints, longitudinal seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 2. Where mastic is indicated provide vapor-barrier mastic as required for indoor or outdoor application.
 - 3. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous vapor barrier and thermal integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 5. Extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches (50-mm)**.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.06 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. and at end joints.
 1. Do not install metal jacket over glass-cloth jacket.
- B. Where PVC piping is installed in a plenum, install plenum fire resistant wrap over PVC piping. Install plenum fire resistant wrap over any PVC piping insulated with flexible elastomeric insulated, if installed in a plenum.

3.07 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
 1. White.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.08 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.09 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Stormwater and Overflow:
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
- B. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.

SECTION 220719.13 - INSULATION FOR STORM-WATER PIPING AND DRAINS (continued):

- C. Floor Drains, Traps, and Drain Piping within 10 Feet (3 m) of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

3.10 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 220719.13

SECTION 220719.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

SECTION 220719.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" and "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.

2.02 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures,:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

SECTION 220719.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

- B. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- C. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- G. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING PIPE COVERS INSTALLATION

- A. Install directly over bare piping or insulation with factory-applied jackets. Press seams together to engage internal fasteners.

3.05 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range.

3.06 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Manufactured Protective Shielding Pipe Covers.

END OF SECTION 220719.15

SECTION 220719.15 - INSULATION FOR ADA PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment:
 - 1. Domestic hot- and cold-water piping.
 - 2. Gray-water piping and storage.
 - 3. Sanitary waste and vent piping.
 - 4. Storm drainage piping.
 - 5. Rainwater retention piping and equipment.
 - 6. Plumbing pumps.
 - 7. General-service compressed air piping and equipment.
 - 8. Plumbing equipment.
 - 9. Compressed-air piping and equipment for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
 - 10. Vacuum piping and equipment for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
 - 11. Medical gases piping, equipment, and alarms.
 - 12. Chemical waste systems for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
 - 13. Processed water systems for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.
 - 2. For construction checklists, comply with requirements in various Division 22 Sections specifying plumbing systems, system components, equipment, and products.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- D. FPT: Functional Performance Test. Test of dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, life safety conditions, power failure, etc. Systems are run through all specified sequences of operation.
- E. SVC: System Verification Checklist. A list of static inspections and elementary component tests that verify proper installation of equipment (e.g., belt tension, oil levels, labels affixed, gauges in place, sensors calibrated, etc.).

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For plumbing testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.
- C. Construction Checklists: Material, installation, and performance test checklists for systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components to be part of the Cx process and according to requirements in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements."
 - 1. Facility water distribution piping, including the following:
 - a. Domestic water piping, fittings, and specialties outside the building.
 - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - c. Outdoor water-storage tanks.
 - d. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - e. Meters and gages.
 - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - g. Hangers and supports.
 - h. Heat tracing.
 - i. Vibration isolation.
 - 2. Domestic water piping, including the following:
 - a. Domestic cold- and hot-water piping, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
 - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - c. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - d. Indoor water-storage tanks.
 - e. Meters and gages.
 - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - g. Hangers and supports.
 - h. Heat tracing.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- i. Vibration isolation.
- 3. Sanitary waste and vent piping, including the following:
 - a. Gravity and forced-main sewerage piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - b. Sanitary waste interceptors.
 - c. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - d. Drains.
 - e. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - f. Meters and gages.
 - g. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - h. Hangers and supports.
 - i. Heat tracing.
 - j. Vibration isolation.
- 4. Gray-water piping, including the following:
 - a. Piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - c. Storage tanks.
 - d. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - e. Meters and gages.
 - f. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - g. Hangers and supports.
 - h. Heat tracing.
 - i. Vibration isolation.
- 5. Storm-water piping, including the following:
 - a. Drainage piping, fittings, and specialties.
 - b. Pumps, motors, accessories, and controls.
 - c. Drains and collection basins.
 - d. Rainwater collection and storage equipment.
 - e. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - f. Meters and gages.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- g. General-duty and specialty valves.
 - h. Hangers and supports.
 - i. Heat tracing.
 - j. Vibration isolation.
- 6. Plumbing fixtures, including the following:
 - a. Water closets, supports and connections, supplies, and flush valves.
 - b. Urinals, supports and connections, supplies, and flush valves.
 - c. Lavatories, supports, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
 - d. Sinks, supports, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
 - e. Tubs, drain connections, and faucets.
 - f. Showers, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
 - g. Wash fountains, supplies, drain connections, and faucets.
 - h. Emergency plumbing fixtures, supplies, drain connections, and controls.
 - i. Drinking fountains, supplies, and drainage connections.
- D. Test equipment and instrumentation list, identifying the following:
 - 1. Equipment/instrument identification number.
 - 2. Planned Cx application or use.
 - 3. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - 4. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
 - 5. Equipment manufacturers' proprietary instrumentation and tools. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
 - a. Instrument or tool identification number.
 - b. Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
 - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Plumbing Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform plumbing construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

1. Journey level or equivalent skill level with knowledge of plumbing system, electrical concepts, and building operations.
 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Medical Gas Piping Systems Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform medical compressed-air, vacuum, and medical gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities system construction checklist verification tests, construction checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in mechanical systems, plumbing systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience in servicing plumbing systems in the gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities plumbing systems industry. Generally, required knowledge includes gas piping for laboratory and healthcare facilities systems, electrical concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of plumbing system equipment, assemblies, and systems.
 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- C. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration:
1. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
 2. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
 3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
 4. Be recalibrated/repaired if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- D. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, shall comply with the following:
 - a. Be calibrated by manufacturer with current calibration tags permanently affixed.
 - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - c. Plumbing system proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for plumbing systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

1. Domestic hot- and cold-water piping.
2. Gray-water piping and storage.
3. Sanitary waste and vent piping.
4. Storm drainage piping.
5. Rainwater retention piping and equipment.
6. Plumbing pumps.
7. General-service compressed air piping and equipment.
8. Plumbing equipment, including the following:
 - a. Water softeners.
 - b. Water storage tanks.
 - c. Water filtration equipment.
 - d. Domestic water heating equipment.
 - e. Plumbing fixtures.
 - f. Water coolers.
9. Compressed-air piping and equipment for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
10. Vacuum piping and equipment for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
11. Medical gases piping, equipment, and alarms.
12. Chemical waste systems for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
13. Processed water systems for laboratory and healthcare facilities.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

- A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.
- B. Return draft construction checklist review comments within 10 days of receipt.
- C. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
- D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

3.03 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- B. Certify that plumbing systems instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).

3.04 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

- A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
 - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
 - 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
 - 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the plumbing system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.05 Cx TESTS COMMON TO PLUMBING

- A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.
- D. Comply with construction checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Division 22 Sections specifying plumbing systems and equipment.
- E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:
 - 1. Construction checklist verification tests.
 - 2. Construction checklist verification test demonstrations.
 - 3. Cx tests.
 - 4. Cx test demonstrations.
- F. Vibration Isolation in Plumbing Systems:

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for vibration control devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
2. Components to Be Tested:
 - a. Vibration isolation control devices in plumbing systems.
 - b. Structural systems.
3. Test Purpose: Evaluate effectiveness of vibration isolation control devices.
4. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at three locations designated by Owner's witness while the isolated equipment operates.
5. Test Conditions: Measure vibration of the facility structure at three locations designated by Owner's witness at the following operating conditions:
 - a. Maximum speed.
 - b. Minimum speed.
 - c. Critical speed.
6. Acceptance Criteria: Structure-borne vibration not to exceed specified performance.

G. Supervision of Alarms in Plumbing Systems:

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for plumbing systems specified in the Sections listed below:
 - a. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping."
 - b. Section 22 12 16 "Facility Elevated, Potable-Water Storage Tanks."
 - c. Section 22 61 13 "Compressed-Air Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities."
 - d. Section 22 63 13 "Gas Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities."
 - e. Section 22 64 00 "Medical Gas Alarms."
2. Scope:
 - a. Supervised plumbing system alarms.
3. Purpose:
 - a. Verify reporting of supervised plumbing alarm at building management system.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Alarm monitoring systems operating in normal, automatic mode.
 - b. Activate supervised plumbing alarms, one at a time.
5. Acceptance Criteria:

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- a. Activation of supervised plumbing alarm generates alarm at building management system control panel.

H. Plumbing Meter Reporting:

- 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for plumbing systems specified in the Sections listed below:
 - a. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping."
 - b. Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - c. Section 22 31 00 "Domestic Water Softeners."
- 2. Scope:
 - a. Supervised plumbing system water meters.
- 3. Purpose:
 - a. Verify accuracy of reporting of supervised plumbing system water meters at building management system.
- 4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Plumbing system water meter recording systems operating in normal, automatic mode.
 - b. Compare cumulative consumption data at plumbing system water meter recording systems with independent, calibrated flow-measuring instrumentation under the following conditions:
 - 1) Low Flow: 1 percent of maximum design flow rate for a period of four hours.
 - 2) High Flow: 80 percent of maximum design flow rate for a period of 20 minutes.
 - c. Activate supervised plumbing alarms, one at a time.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Cumulative flow reported for low-flow condition is within 5 percent flow recorded by calibrated flow-measuring instrumentation.
 - b. Cumulative flow reported for high-flow condition is within 1 percent flow recorded by calibrated flow-measuring instrumentation.

I. Heat Tracing in Plumbing Systems:

- 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists for heat tracing specified in heat-tracing systems. Comply with requirements listed in Section 22 05 33 "Heat Tracing for Plumbing Piping."
- 2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested:
 - a. Self-regulating, parallel-resistance heating cables.
 - b. Heater trace circuit controller.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

3. Test Purpose:
 - a. Evaluate response to ambient temperature below freeze-protection set point.
 - b. Evaluate heating cable fault alarm.
4. Test Conditions:
 - a. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately 3 deg F above freeze-protection set point (initial set point 41 deg F). Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is energized.
 - b. Subject temperature sensor to temperature approximately 3 deg F below freeze-protection set point (initial set point 41 deg F). Monitor sensed temperature with a calibration-grade thermometer. Gradually change set point or sensed temperature until freeze-protection circuit is de-energized.
 - c. Simulate an electrical fault on the heating cable.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Freeze-protection circuit is energized at set-point temperature minus 2 deg F.
 - b. Freeze-protection circuit is de-energized at set-point temperature plus 2 deg F.
 - c. Heater trace circuit controller initiates an alarm of cable fault. Alarm is correctly reported at the fire-alarm control panel.

3.06 Cx TESTS FOR COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEMS

A. Air Compressor Run Time:

1. Prerequisites:
 - a. Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified in the following:
 - 1) Section 22 15 19 "General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers."
 - 2) Section 22 61 19 "Compressed-Air Equipment for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities."
2. Scope:
 - a. Air compressors in plumbing systems.
 - b. Associated compressed air piping, valves, and appurtenances.
 - c. Associated air pressure controllers.
3. Purpose: Evaluate air compressor run time and number of compressor starts.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Keep compressed air openings closed during test.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- b. For systems with multiple compressors, lock out compressor motors on all but one compressor. Repeat test for each compressor in turn.
 - c. Record number of air compressor motor starts during a 14-day period.
 - d. Record air compressor motor run time during the same 14-day period.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Number of compressor motor starts during test period shall not exceed 20.
 - b. Compressor motor run time during test period shall not exceed 60 minutes.

3.07 Cx TESTS FOR VACUUM SYSTEMS

A. Vacuum Pump Run Time:

- 1. Prerequisites:
 - a. Acceptance of results of construction checklists for vacuum equipment for laboratory and healthcare facilities.
- 2. Scope:
 - a. Vacuum pumps in plumbing systems.
 - b. Associated vacuum piping, valves, and appurtenances.
 - c. Associated vacuum pressure controllers.
- 3. Purpose:
 - a. Evaluate vacuum pump run time and number of vacuum pump starts.
- 4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Keep vacuum piping openings closed during test.
 - b. For systems with multiple vacuum pumps, lock out vacuum pump motors on all but one pump. Repeat test for each vacuum pump in turn.
 - c. Record number of vacuum pump motor starts during a 14-day period.
 - d. Record vacuum pump motor run time during the same 14-day period.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Number of vacuum pump motor starts during test period shall not exceed 20.
 - b. Vacuum pump motor run time during test period shall not exceed 60 minutes.

3.08 Cx TESTS FOR PROCESSED WATER SYSTEMS

A. Air Compressor Run Time:

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results of construction checklists specified for processed-water systems. Comply with requirements in Section 22 67 00 "Processed Water Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities."
2. Scope:
 - a. Processed water equipment in plumbing systems.
 - b. Associated processed water piping, valves, and appurtenances.
 - c. Processed water point-of-use fixtures.
3. Purpose: Evaluate processed water quality at points-of-use.
4. Conditions of the Test:
 - a. Operate water processing equipment and circulation pumps in normal automatic mode for seven days prior to the test.
 - b. Collect process water samples from points-of-use.
 - c. Collect and handle water samples according to analytical laboratory recommendations.
 - d. Document that the following parameters meet minimum standards required for the specified grade of process water, as applicable:
 - 1) Resistivity.
 - 2) pH.
 - 3) Total organic carbon (TOC).
 - 4) Sodium.
 - 5) Chloride.
 - 6) Total silica.
 - 7) Microbial.
 - 8) Endotoxin.
 - 9) Bacteria.
5. Acceptance Criteria:
 - a. Measured process water parameters shall meet the following criteria:
 - 1) Resistivity: 10 megohms.
 - 2) pH: 6 units.
 - 3) TOC: 500 ppb.
 - 4) Sodium: 5 ug/L.
 - 5) Chloride: 5 ug/L.

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

- 6) Total Silica: 3 ug/L.
- 7) Microbial: 10 CFU/mL.
- 8) Endotoxin: 0.01 EU/mL.
- 9) Bacteria: 10 CFU/100 mL.

END OF SECTION 220800

SECTION 220800 - COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. CPVC piping.
3. PVC pipe and fittings.
4. PP-RCT pipe and fittings.
5. Piping joining materials.
6. Encasement for piping.
7. Transition fittings.
8. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
2. Section 22 11 16.13 "Underground Metal Domestic Hot Water Piping" for underground domestic hot-water piping.
3. Section 22 11 16.15 "Underground Plastic Domestic Hot Water Piping" for underground domestic hot-water piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Pipe and tube.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Owner no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. PP-RCT Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace PP-RCT pipe and fittings that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Warranty is to cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system due to defects in materials or manufacturing.
 2. Warranty is to be in effect only upon submission by Contractor to manufacturer of valid pressure/leak documentation indicating that the system was tested and passed manufacturer's pressure/leak test and any other manufacturer requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372.
- B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- G. Copper Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Viega LLC ; ProPress Copper. or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
 2. Fittings: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 3. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.03 CPVC PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F441/F441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F438 for Schedule 40.
2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F437, Schedule 80.

2.04 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

2.05 Polypropylene (PP-RCT) Pipe:

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Aquatherm; GreenPipe PP-RCT.
 2. Nupi Americas; Niron Clima PP-RCT.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain polypropylene (PP-RCT) pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Description: Three-layer composite extrusion ASTM F2389; pipe pressure rating to comply with temperature and pressure ratings of code requirements for the applicable service.
 1. Inner Layer: Solid PP-RCT
 - a. Middle Layer: PP-RCT with fiberglass reinforcement
 - b. Outer Layer: Solid PP-RCT
 - c. Polypropylene Fittings: ASTM F2389, socket fusion, butt fusion, electrofusion, or fusion outlet fittings to be used for fusion-welded joints between pipe and fittings.
 2. Mechanical fittings and transition fittings to be used where transitions are made to other piping materials or to valves and appurtenances.
 3. Polypropylene pipe is to be unthreaded. Threaded transition fittings in accordance with ASTM F2389 to be used where a threaded connection is required.
- D. Smoke and Fire Ratings:
 1. Where indicated on the Drawings that a plenum-rated piping system is required, the pipe is to be wrapped and/or insulated with fiberglass or mineral wool pipe insulation, and field installed.
 2. The system is to have a flame spread classification of less than 25 and smoke development rating of less than 50.
 3. Pipe, wrap, or insulation as a system to meet the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2-03, ASTM E84, or UL 2846.
 4. For insulation required for thermal and condensation reasons, see Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- E. Integration of PP-R Piping Systems with Other Systems:
 1. When integrating PP-R piping systems with other systems or with components not made of PP-R (for example, valves, pumps, other piping, check valves, or strainers), ensure the operating parameters for PP-R will not damage other materials in the system or vice versa.
 2. Verify that all parts of the system are compatible with the medium being carried before installation. PP-R pipe does not require treatment to protect it from corrosion. Metals (ferrous and

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- non-ferrous) in the system may be susceptible to corrosion. Provide water treatment to protect system metals.
3. Do not mix PP-R pipe with other piping systems in conditions that will cause the other system or components to fail.
 4. For Domestic Hot Water Recirculation (DHWR) Systems:
 - a. When copper piping used in conjunction with PP-R in a domestic hot water recirculation system, ensure the operating conditions will not cause degradation or erosion/corrosion of the copper.
 - b. Follow the Copper Development Association guidelines (CDA Publication A4015-14/16: "Copper Tube Handbook") for sizing, temperature and flow velocity in the copper tubing.
 - c. Sustained high levels of copper in DHWR piping can damage components within the system, even PP-R.
 - d. Ensure that the maximum hot water-temperature within any part of the system/loop does not exceed 140 deg F. Some regulations and codes further restrict the temperature at any fixture to a maximum of 120 deg F. Do not exceed the temperature rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - e. Maximum temperature used must not exceed the rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - f. Flow rates in a domestic hot water recirculation system should not exceed 1.5 ft./sec anywhere in the system, except in some special cases where velocities up to 3 ft./sec are needed to achieve proper flow temperature.
 - g. When adding PP-R to an existing copper system in a domestic hot water recirculation application, the level of copper in the water must be tested. Do not install PP-R where levels exceed 0.1 mg/L (ppm).
- F. PP-R Socket Fittings: ASTM F2389.
- 2.06 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS
- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493.
1. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.07 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet .
- C. Color: Black.

2.08 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 1. Description:
 - a. CPVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 1. Description:
 - a. CPVC four-part union.
 - b. Brass or stainless steel threaded end.
 - c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
 - d. Rubber O-ring.
 - e. Union nut.

2.09 SINGLE-PIECE, CUSTOMIZABLE, IN-BUILDING RISER

- A. Description: Single-piece, extended 90-degree fitting that passes under the foundation without joints and extends through the floor to transition from exterior underground piping to interior aboveground piping.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ames Fire & Waterworks; Series IBR (NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger) / Series IBR2 (NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller) or a comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- a. [Watts; Series TR / TR2.](#)
- B. Tubing: ASTM A312; Type 304 stainless steel tubing.
- C. End Connections:
 - 1. **NPS 2** (DN 50): Threaded or grooved.
 - a. Threaded: ASTM B1.20.1
 - b. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
 - 2. **NPS 2-1/2** (DN 65) **or Larger**: Flanged, grooved, or CIPS coupler.
 - a. CIPS Coupler: AWWA C900 for connection to PVC or Ductile Iron Pipe.
 - b. Flanged: AWWA C207, Class D and ANSI B16.5, Class 150.
 - c. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
- D. Lengths:
 - 1. **NPS 3** (DN 80) **and Smaller**: Customizable leg lengths, from **3-feet** (0.9 m) to **16-feet** (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of **19-feet** (5.8 m).
 - 2. **NPS 4** (DN 100) **and Larger**: Customizable leg lengths, from **3-feet** (0.9 m) to **16-feet** (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of **20-feet** (6.1 m).
- E. Maximum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
- F. Approvals: NFPA 24, FM Class 1920, UL HKQA.
- G. Accessories include the following:
 - 1. Test cap and coupler.
 - 2. Flange adapter.

2.10 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 1. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 2. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 3. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 4. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- I. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 3. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- J. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- K. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.

3.02 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install valves according to Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
- E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves if service static pressure exceeds 60 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- J. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- O. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 22 11 23 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- Q. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- I. Socket-Fusion, Electrofusion, or Butt-Fusion Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tools and procedure.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition unions.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for copper tubing and piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for plastic piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with requirements herein, manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
1. Maximum Support Spacing:
 - a. Systems with medium 70°F and below: 6 feet.
 - b. Systems with medium above 70°F: 4 feet.
 2. Hangers and Clamps: Metric sized with minimum 0.125-inch rubber-lined (EPDM). Do not use metal hangers and clamps or IPS sized products.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- a. Anchors (Fixed Points): Tighten clamp to restrict axial movement, but do not over-tighten the clamp. Locate anchors at changes in directions and take-offs within 12 inches of fittings. Vertical risers shall be installed only with anchors.
 - b. Guides (Sliding Points): Adjust clamp to allow axial movement. Located guides along straight sections of piping. Do not use on vertical risers.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of CPVC, PVC, and PP-R piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.08 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect to underground water-service piping where it passes under the building. Extend underground water-service piping and connect to building domestic water piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated using single-piece, in-building risers.
- 1. Coordinate horizontal and vertical lengths of single-piece, in-building risers to extend from the exterior of the building, underneath the foundation, and through the floor up to between 24 inches and 36 inches above finished floor.
 - 2. Coordinate horizontal and vertical end connections of single-piece, in-building risers with underground water-service piping and domestic water piping inside the building.
 - 3. Terminate domestic water piping within the building at the service entrance until building domestic water piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's domestic water piping systems when those systems are installed.
- E. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
- 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure but not less than 150 psig (1034 kPa), without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Hydrostatic testing and documentation of test results for polypropylene piping to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and submitted to the manufacturer upon successful completion per warranty requirements.
- f. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

- g. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. CPVC piping.
3. PVC pipe and fittings.
4. PP-RCT pipe and fittings.
5. Piping joining materials.
6. Encasement for piping.
7. Transition fittings.
8. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 22 11 13 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
2. Section 22 11 16.13 "Underground Metal Domestic Hot Water Piping" for underground domestic hot-water piping.
3. Section 22 11 16.15 "Underground Plastic Domestic Hot Water Piping" for underground domestic hot-water piping.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Pipe and tube.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Owner no fewer than 5 days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. PP-RCT Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace PP-RCT pipe and fittings that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Warranty is to cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system due to defects in materials or manufacturing.
 2. Warranty is to be in effect only upon submission by Contractor to manufacturer of valid pressure/leak documentation indicating that the system was tested and passed manufacturer's pressure/leak test and any other manufacturer requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372.
- B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type K.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- G. Copper Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Viega LLC ; ProPress Copper. or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
 2. Fittings: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 3. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.03 CPVC PIPING

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F441/F441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

1. CPVC Socket Fittings: ASTM F438 for Schedule 40.
2. CPVC Threaded Fittings: ASTM F437, Schedule 80.

2.04 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

2.05 Polypropylene (PP-RCT) Pipe:

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Aquatherm; GreenPipe PP-RCT.
 2. Nupi Americas; Niron Clima PP-RCT.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain polypropylene (PP-RCT) pipe and fittings from single manufacturer.
- C. Description: Three-layer composite extrusion ASTM F2389; pipe pressure rating to comply with temperature and pressure ratings of code requirements for the applicable service.
 1. Inner Layer: Solid PP-RCT
 - a. Middle Layer: PP-RCT with fiberglass reinforcement
 - b. Outer Layer: Solid PP-RCT
 - c. Polypropylene Fittings: ASTM F2389, socket fusion, butt fusion, electrofusion, or fusion outlet fittings to be used for fusion-welded joints between pipe and fittings.
 2. Mechanical fittings and transition fittings to be used where transitions are made to other piping materials or to valves and appurtenances.
 3. Polypropylene pipe is to be unthreaded. Threaded transition fittings in accordance with ASTM F2389 to be used where a threaded connection is required.
- D. Smoke and Fire Ratings:
 1. Where indicated on the Drawings that a plenum-rated piping system is required, the pipe is to be wrapped and/or insulated with fiberglass or mineral wool pipe insulation, and field installed.
 2. The system is to have a flame spread classification of less than 25 and smoke development rating of less than 50.
 3. Pipe, wrap, or insulation as a system to meet the requirements of CAN/ULC-S102.2-03, ASTM E84, or UL 2846.
 4. For insulation required for thermal and condensation reasons, see Section 22 07 19 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- E. Integration of PP-R Piping Systems with Other Systems:
 1. When integrating PP-R piping systems with other systems or with components not made of PP-R (for example, valves, pumps, other piping, check valves, or strainers), ensure the operating parameters for PP-R will not damage other materials in the system or vice versa.
 2. Verify that all parts of the system are compatible with the medium being carried before installation. PP-R pipe does not require treatment to protect it from corrosion. Metals (ferrous and

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- non-ferrous) in the system may be susceptible to corrosion. Provide water treatment to protect system metals.
3. Do not mix PP-R pipe with other piping systems in conditions that will cause the other system or components to fail.
 4. For Domestic Hot Water Recirculation (DHWR) Systems:
 - a. When copper piping used in conjunction with PP-R in a domestic hot water recirculation system, ensure the operating conditions will not cause degradation or erosion/corrosion of the copper.
 - b. Follow the Copper Development Association guidelines (CDA Publication A4015-14/16: "Copper Tube Handbook") for sizing, temperature and flow velocity in the copper tubing.
 - c. Sustained high levels of copper in DHWR piping can damage components within the system, even PP-R.
 - d. Ensure that the maximum hot water-temperature within any part of the system/loop does not exceed 140 deg F. Some regulations and codes further restrict the temperature at any fixture to a maximum of 120 deg F. Do not exceed the temperature rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - e. Maximum temperature used must not exceed the rating of the pipe for the operating pressure.
 - f. Flow rates in a domestic hot water recirculation system should not exceed 1.5 ft./sec anywhere in the system, except in some special cases where velocities up to 3 ft./sec are needed to achieve proper flow temperature.
 - g. When adding PP-R to an existing copper system in a domestic hot water recirculation application, the level of copper in the water must be tested. Do not install PP-R where levels exceed 0.1 mg/L (ppm).
- F. PP-R Socket Fittings: ASTM F2389.
- 2.06 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS
- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493.
1. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Solvent Cements for Joining PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer according to ASTM F656.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- G. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gaskets, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.07 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet .
- C. Color: Black.

2.08 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
1. Description:
 - a. CPVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions.
 - b. One end with threaded brass insert and one solvent-cement-socket or threaded end.
- E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
1. Description:
 - a. CPVC four-part union.
 - b. Brass or stainless steel threaded end.
 - c. Solvent-cement-joint or threaded plastic end.
 - d. Rubber O-ring.
 - e. Union nut.

2.09 SINGLE-PIECE, CUSTOMIZABLE, IN-BUILDING RISER

- A. Description: Single-piece, extended 90-degree fitting that passes under the foundation without joints and extends through the floor to transition from exterior underground piping to interior aboveground piping.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ames Fire & Waterworks; Series IBR (NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger) / Series IBR2 (NPS 3 (DN 80) and Smaller) or a comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- a. [Watts; Series TR / TR2.](#)
 - B. Tubing: ASTM A312; Type 304 stainless steel tubing.
 - C. End Connections:
 - 1. **NPS 2** (DN 50): Threaded or grooved.
 - a. Threaded: ASTM B1.20.1
 - b. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
 - 2. **NPS 2-1/2** (DN 65) **or Larger**: Flanged, grooved, or CIPS coupler.
 - a. CIPS Coupler: AWWA C900 for connection to PVC or Ductile Iron Pipe.
 - b. Flanged: AWWA C207, Class D and ANSI B16.5, Class 150.
 - c. Grooved: AWWA C606 for roll grooved pipe.
 - D. Lengths:
 - 1. **NPS 3** (DN 80) **and Smaller**: Customizable leg lengths, from **3-feet** (0.9 m) to **16-feet** (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of **19-feet** (5.8 m).
 - 2. **NPS 4** (DN 100) **and Larger**: Customizable leg lengths, from **3-feet** (0.9 m) to **16-feet** (4.9 m), not to exceed a combined length of **20-feet** (6.1 m).
 - E. Maximum Working Pressure: 200 psig.
 - F. Approvals: NFPA 24, FM Class 1920, UL HKQA.
 - G. Accessories include the following:
 - 1. Test cap and coupler.
 - 2. Flange adapter.
- 2.10 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS
- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 - C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 - D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water, building-service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 1. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Annealed-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 2. PVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 3. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 4. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic cold-water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 11 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- I. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 3. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and socket fusion or electrofusion joints.
- J. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.
- K. Aboveground domestic hot-water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. CPVC, Schedule 40; socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Polypropylene (PP-RCT), SDR 9 pipe and fittings and butt fusion joints.

3.02 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install valves according to Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
- E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves if service static pressure exceeds 60 psig. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- J. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- O. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 22 11 23 "Domestic Water Pumps."
- Q. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2855.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
- I. Socket-Fusion, Electrofusion, or Butt-Fusion Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tools and procedure.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition unions.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for copper tubing and piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for plastic piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with requirements herein, manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
1. Maximum Support Spacing:
 - a. Systems with medium 70°F and below: 6 feet.
 - b. Systems with medium above 70°F: 4 feet.
 2. Hangers and Clamps: Metric sized with minimum 0.125-inch rubber-lined (EPDM). Do not use metal hangers and clamps or IPS sized products.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- a. Anchors (Fixed Points): Tighten clamp to restrict axial movement, but do not over-tighten the clamp. Locate anchors at changes in directions and take-offs within 12 inches of fittings. Vertical risers shall be installed only with anchors.
 - b. Guides (Sliding Points): Adjust clamp to allow axial movement. Located guides along straight sections of piping. Do not use on vertical risers.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of CPVC, PVC, and PP-R piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.08 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect to underground water-service piping where it passes under the building. Extend underground water-service piping and connect to building domestic water piping systems at locations and pipe sizes indicated using single-piece, in-building risers.
- 1. Coordinate horizontal and vertical lengths of single-piece, in-building risers to extend from the exterior of the building, underneath the foundation, and through the floor up to between 24 inches and 36 inches above finished floor.
 - 2. Coordinate horizontal and vertical end connections of single-piece, in-building risers with underground water-service piping and domestic water piping inside the building.
 - 3. Terminate domestic water piping within the building at the service entrance until building domestic water piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building's domestic water piping systems when those systems are installed.
- E. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
- 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure but not less than 150 psig (1034 kPa), without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Hydrostatic testing and documentation of test results for polypropylene piping to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and submitted to the manufacturer upon successful completion per warranty requirements.
- f. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- g. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.
 - 2. Vertically mounted, in-line, multi-stage, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS (continued):

2.02 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc
 - 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation
 - 3. TACO Incorporated
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
 - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
 - 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
 - 4. Casing: Bronze, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
 - 5. Impeller: Plastic.
 - 6. Motor: Single speed.

2.03 VERTICALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, MULTI-STAGE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, multi-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted vertical.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
 - 2. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
 - 3. TACO Incorporated.
- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split 304 stainless steel, with wear rings and threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - 2. Impeller: Stainless steel, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Stainless-steel shaft and shaft sleeve.
 - 4. Shaft Coupling: Flexible or rigid type if pump is provided with coupling.
 - 5. Seal: Mechanical, with tungsten-carbide rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, tungsten-carbide seat, and EPDM O-rings. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 6. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 - 7. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
 - 8. Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.04 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 22 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS (continued):

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.05 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Electric; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
 2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
 3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 4. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 5. Transformer: Provide if required.
 6. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 7. Settings: Start pump at 110 deg F and stop pump at 120 deg F.
- B. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
 5. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3.02 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 22 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install pressure switches in water-supply piping.
- E. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.
- F. Install timers adjacent to water heater.

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS (continued):

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Vertically mounted, in-line, multi-stage, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
- E. Install pressure gauge and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gauge and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tappings where provided or install pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Domestic Water Piping."

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.
- C. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS (continued):

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 4. Set thermostats, and timers for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 7. Start motor.
 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Ductile-iron pipe and fittings.
 - 5. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 6. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 7. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 8. Plenum fire wrap.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 226600 "Chemical-Waste Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities" for chemical-waste and vent piping systems.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
 - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).

2.02 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Furnish new and unused piping materials manufactured in the United States of America. Piping shall be marked with country of origin from the manufacturer.
- C. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.03 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
 - 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - 3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.
- B. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- C. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- D. Caulking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.04 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
 - 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - 3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.
- B. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky (SD 4000).
 - b. Clamp-All Corp (Hi-Torq 80).
 - c. MIFAB, Inc (MI-XHUB).
 - d. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc (HeavyWeight).

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.05 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Standard Weight class. Include square-cut-grooved or threaded ends matching joining method.
- B. Galvanized-Cast-Iron Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, threaded.
- C. Steel Pipe Pressure Fittings:
 1. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
 3. Galvanized-Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- D. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

2.06 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Ductile-Iron, Push-on-Joint Piping:
 1. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot ends unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 2. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110/A21.10, push-on-joint, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153/A21.53, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 3. Gaskets: AWWA C111/A21.11, rubber.

2.07 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type B and Type C), water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- E. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.08 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
 1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.09 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

4. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.10 PLENUM FIRE WRAP

- A. Material: High-temperature fiber blanket thermal insulation encapsulated in fiberglass-reinforced aluminum foil.
- B. Density: 6 pcf.
- C. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
 - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping **NPS 3 (DN 80)** and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.
- O. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- P. Install aboveground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- Q. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
 - 1. The installation of plastic pipe beneath a building built on unstable soil shall be accomplished by suspending piping systems from structural slabs in accordance with ASTM F2536 (Standard Guide for Installing Plastic DWV Piping Suspended from On-Grade Slabs) and piping manufacturer's technical and installation manual.
- R. Wrap PVC piping installed in plenums with fire resistant wrap.
- S. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
 - 1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
 - 2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
- U. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- V. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- W. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- X. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
 - Y. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
 - Z. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.03 **JOINT CONSTRUCTION**
- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
 - B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
 - C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
 - D. Join stainless-steel pipe and fittings with gaskets according to ASME A112.3.1.
 - E. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
 - F. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
 - G. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.
- 3.04 **SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION**
- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

- a. **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)** and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
- b. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
3. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100)**: Use dielectric flange kits.
4. Dielectric Fittings for **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves according to Section 220523.31 "General Duty Valves for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 2. Install full-port ball valve for piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.
 3. Install gate valve for piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves.
 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 4. Comply with requirements for backwater valve specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.06 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. **100 Feet (30 m)** and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than **100 Feet (30 m)**: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than **100 Feet (30 m)** if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs **100 Feet (30 m)** or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install hangers for cast-iron, steel, and copper soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

- C. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within **12 inches (300 mm)** of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of cast iron, steel, and copper soil piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 - 6. Comply with requirements for backwater valves, cleanouts, and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 7. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
 - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
 - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
 - 1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 - 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than **10-foot head of water (30 kPa)**.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
 - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of **1-inch wg (250 Pa)**.
 - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
 - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours.
 - b. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
 4. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 5. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

4. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - a. Option for Vent Piping, **NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 and DN 90)**: Hard copper tube, **Type M (Type C)**; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
5. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
6. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and larger shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
 3. Galvanized-steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
 4. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and larger shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- H. Underground, soil, and waste piping **NPS 4** and smaller receiving waste above 140°F shall be the following for a minimum of 25 feet beyond the drain source:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints, where drains receive waste above 140°F
 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- I. Underground, soil and waste piping **NPS 5** and larger receiving waste above 140°F shall be the following for a minimum of 25 feet beyond the drain source:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints, where drains receive waste above 140°F.
 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- J. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50)** shall be any of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, **Type L (Type B)**; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- K. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150)** shall be any of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, **Type L (Type B)**; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Galvanized-steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- L. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and smaller shall be the following:
 1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING (continued):

2. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)** and pressure transition coupling for **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40)** and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.
- M. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains **NPS 5 (DN 125)** and larger shall be the following:
1. Ductile-iron, push-on-joint piping and push-on joints.
 2. Pressure transition couplings if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backwater valves.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Air-admittance valves.
 - 4. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.02 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1090 / Z1095 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Body: Cast iron.
5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted access check valve.
6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
8. Extension: ASTM A74, Service Class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
3. Body: Cast iron or bronze; made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
5. Inlet: Threaded.
6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.

C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; BW2930 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. NDS Inc.
 - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Size: Same as connected piping.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
6. End Connections: Socket type.
7. Extension: Full-size, PVC pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

2.03 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- a. [Josam Company; Josam Div.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Watts Drainage Products Inc.](#)
 - e. [Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1400-K or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Josam Company; Josam Div.](#)
 - b. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Watts Drainage Products Inc.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
 4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
 6. Clamping Device: Required.
 7. Outlet Connection: Inside caulk.
 8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
 10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 12. Top-Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
 13. Riser: ASTM A74, Service Class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
- C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Josam Company; Josam Div.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Watts Drainage Products Inc](#) (CO-460-RD).
 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 5. Closure Plug:
 - a. Brass.
 - b. Countersunk head.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
 6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

D. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-2449 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **NDS Inc.**
 - b. **Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.**
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Outlet Connection: PVC hub.
5. Closure Plug: ABS plug with tapered threads.
6. Adjustable Housing Material: PVC with threads.
7. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
8. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
10. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

E. Plastic Wall Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-2412 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **NDS Inc.**
 - b. **Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.**
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body Material: PVC.
4. Body: PVC Socket.
5. Closure Plug:
 - a. PVC.
 - b. Countersunk head.
 - c. Brass threaded insert for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

2.04 **AIR-ADMITTANCE VALVES**

A. Fixture Air-Admittance Valves:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. **Oatey.**
 - b. **RectorSeal.**
 - c. **Studor, Inc.**
2. Standard: ASSE 1051, Type A for single fixture or Type B for branch piping.
3. Housing: Plastic.
4. Operation: Mechanical sealing diaphragm.
5. Size: Same as connected fixture or branch vent piping.

B. Wall Box for Air-Admittance Valves:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- a. [Oatey.](#)
 - b. [RectorSeal.](#)
 - c. [Studor, Inc.](#)
2. Description: White plastic housing with white plastic grille, made for recessed installation. Include bottom pipe connection and space to contain one air-admittance valve.
 3. Size: Approximately **6 inches wide by 6 inches high by 4 inches deep** (**150 mm wide by 150 mm high by 100 mm deep**).

2.05 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A74, Service Class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C564 rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. **NPS 2 (DN 50): 4-inch- (100-mm-)** minimum water seal.
 - b. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 5-inch- (125-mm-)** minimum water seal.

C. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** side inlet.

D. Floor-Drain, Inline Trap Seal:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Green Drain, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.](#)
 - c. [Josam Company.](#)
 - d. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - e. [RectorSeal Plumbing; A CSW Industrials Company.](#)
2. Description: Inline floor drain trap seal, forming a physical barrier to slow trap evaporation while not impeding flow from drain.
3. Material: Polymer.
4. Standard: Tested and certified in accordance with ASSE 1072.
5. Listing: ICC-ES or IAPMO listed.
6. Size: Same as floor drain outlet or strainer throat.

E. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- F. Sleeve Flashing Device:
1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend **2 inches (51 mm)** above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- G. Stack Flashing Fittings:
1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
 2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backwater valves in building drain piping.
1. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Size same as drainage piping up to **NPS 4 (DN 100)**. Use **NPS 4 (DN 100)** for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** for piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and smaller and **100 feet (30 m)** for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install fixture air-admittance valves on fixture drain piping.
- F. Install air-admittance-valve wall boxes recessed in wall.
- G. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub **2 inches (51 mm)** above floor.
- H. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- I. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
 2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- J. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- M. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.02 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Floor drains.
 - 2. Floor sinks.
 - 3. Channel drainage systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

2.02 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FD-100-A (Round) / Watts; FD-100-M (Square) or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Josam Company; Josam Div.**
 - b. **MIFAB, Inc.**
 - c. **Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.**
 - d. **Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.**
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
 - 3. Pattern: Floor drain.
 - 4. Body: Gray iron, with seepage flange, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
 - 5. Outlet: Bottom, push-on type with gasket.

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS (continued):

6. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
7. Strainer: Nickel bronze, medium duty, shape as indicated below:
 - a. Tile Floors: Square, 6 inch x 6 inch (152 mm x 152 mm).
 - b. All Floors Except Tile Floors: Round, 6 inch (152 mm) for all floors except tile floors.
8. Trap: Deep-seal P-trap.
9. Funnel: Provide where indicated on plans.

B. Cast-Iron, Security, Floor Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FD-1100-A-LR or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Willoughby Industries.
 - c. Whitehall Manufacturing.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body: Gray iron, with seepage flange, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
5. Outlet: Bottom, push-on type with gasket.
6. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
7. Strainer: Stainless steel, heavy duty, ligature resistant, round, 6 inch (152 mm), with vandal-proof hardware.
8. Trap: Deep-seal P-trap.

2.03 FLOOR SINKS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Sinks:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FS-730 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.7. Pattern: Floor drain.
3. Body: Acid-resistant enamel coated cast iron, with seepage holes, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
4. Outlet: Bottom, push-on type with gasket.
5. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
6. Strainer: Polypropylene, internal dome bottom.
7. Grate: Acid-resistant enamel coated cast iron, square, 12 inch x 12 inch (305 mm x 305 mm), loose.
8. Sink Depth: 6 inch (152 mm).
9. Trap: Deep-seal P-trap.

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS (continued):

2.04 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ACO USA; Klassik-Drain K100 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
3. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps.
 - a. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
 - b. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - c. Dimensions: **4-inch (102-mm)** inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - d. Frame: Galvanized steel for grates.
4. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - a. Material: Ductile iron.
 - 1) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
5. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- #### **A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.**
1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, **30 Inches (750 mm)** or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than **1/4-inch (6.35-mm)** total depression.
 - b. Radius, **30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm)**: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - c. Radius, **60 Inches (1500 mm)** or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than **1-inch (25-mm)** total depression.
 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
 - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS (continued):

- 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
 - 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASME A112.3.1 for installation of stainless-steel channel drainage systems.
 - 1. Install on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- D. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches (51 mm) above floor.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors" for grease interceptors, grease-removal devices, oil interceptors, sand interceptors, and solid interceptors.
- D. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Oil interceptors.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- B. PP: Polypropylene.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal and plastic interceptor. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
 - 1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste interceptors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 OIL INTERCEPTORS

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS (continued):

- A. Steel Oil Interceptors: Factory fabricated; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Highland Tank.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Rockford Sanitary Systems, Inc.
 - e. Watts Water Technologies; a Watts company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil-Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Extension: Steel shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.
 - 4. Cover: Steel, with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C890, A-12 Medium-Trafficload.
 - 5. Mounting:
 - a. Indoor Locations: Recessed, flush with floor.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: Top flush with grade.
- B. Plastic Oil Interceptors: Removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z885-1.
 - 2. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub.
 - 3. Cover: Plastic with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C890, load.
 - 4. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Capacity: As indicated on Plans.
 - b. Body Dimensions:
 - 1) Depth: **36 inch (914 mm).**
 - 2) Invert: **12 inch (305 mm).**
 - c. Inlet and Outlet Pipe Size: **4 inch (100 mm).**
 - d. End Connections: Hub.
 - e. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet.
 - f. Mounting: Recessed, flush with floor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install solids interceptors on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 - 2. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS (continued):

- B. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
- C. Set metal and plastic interceptors level and plumb.
- D. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements.
 - 1. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install oil interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Division 31.
 - 1. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
 - 2. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 3. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.
- B. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Grease interceptors.
 - 2. Oil interceptors.
 - 3. Solids interceptors.
 - 4. Hair and Fur interceptors.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sanitary waste interceptors from damage during construction period.
- B. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by sanitary waste interceptor installation.

END OF SECTION 221323

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Backwater valves.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Downspout Adapters:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured, gray-iron casting, for attaching to horizontal-outlet, parapet roof drain and to exterior sheet metal downspout.
 - 2. Size: Inlet size to match parapet drain outlet.
- B. Downspout Boots:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A48/A48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
 - 2. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 outlet.
- C. Metal Downspout Nozzles:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z199 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Josam Company.**
 - b. **Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.**
 - c. **Watts Water Technologies, Inc.**
 - 2. Description: Nozzle with wall flange and mounting holes to cover rough opening and serve as anchor.

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

3. Size: Same as connected downspout.
4. Material: Cast bronze or nickel bronze nozzle and flange.
5. Piping Connection Type: Threaded or No-hub for connecting to cast-iron pipes, or Slip on for connecting to PVC pipes.
6. Opening Protection: None.

2.02 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1400-K or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: Hub with inside caulk.
8. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-2449 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. NDS Inc.
 - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body Material: PVC.

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

4. Outlet Connection: PVC hub.
5. Closure Plug: ABS plug with tapered threads.
6. Adjustable Housing Material: PVC with threads.
7. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
8. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
10. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

D. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1446 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
 - a. Brass.
 - b. Countersunk head.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.

E. Plastic Wall Cleanouts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; CO-2412 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. NDS Inc.
 - b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body Material: PVC.
4. Body: PVC Socket.
5. Closure Plug:
 - a. PVC.
 - b. Countersunk head.
 - c. Brass threaded insert for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

2.03 BACKWATER VALVES

A. Cast-Iron, Horizontal Backwater Valves:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z1090 / Z1095 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Watts Drainage Products Inc.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 4. Body Material: Cast iron.
 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted access check valve.
 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or no hub.
 7. Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
 8. Extension: ASTM A74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
- B. Plastic, Horizontal Backwater Valves:
1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; BW2930 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [NDS Inc.](#)
 - b. [Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.](#)
 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 4. Body Material: PVC.
 5. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
 6. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
 7. End Connections: Socket type.
 8. Extension: Full-size, PVC pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- B. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.
- C. Install downspout nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping in accordance with the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

- G. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.
- H. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- I. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- J. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.03 PROTECTION

- A. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal roof drains.
 - 2. Area drains.
 - 3. Trench drains.
 - 4. Channel drainage systems.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z100 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Josam Company.**
 - b. **MIFAB, Inc.**
 - c. **Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.**
 - d. **Watts Water Technologies, Inc.**
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
 - 3. Body Material: Cast iron.
 - 4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
 - 5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
 - 6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
 - 7. Outlet: Bottom.
 - 8. Outlet Type: No hub.
 - 9. Extension Collars: Required.
 - 10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
 - 11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
 - 12. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
 - 13. Dome Material: Aluminum.

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

14. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
15. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
16. Water Dam:
 - a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

B. Cast-Iron, Medium-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z121 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: 8- to 12-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Outlet Type: No hub.
9. Extension Collars: Required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
12. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
13. Dome Material: Aluminum.
14. Wire Mesh: Not required.
15. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
16. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
17. Water Dam:
 - a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

C. Cast-Iron, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z125 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: [Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Outlet Type: No hub.
8. Extension Collars: Required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
12. Dome Material: Aluminum.

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

13. Wire Mesh: Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
15. Water Dam:
 - a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

D. Cast-Iron, Extra Large-Sump, High-Capacity Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z101 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 20-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Outlet Type: No hub.
9. Extension Collars: Required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
12. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
13. Dome Material: Aluminum.
14. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
15. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
16. Water Dam:
 - a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

E. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, Combination Main Roof and Overflow Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z163 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Drain Quantity: Two.
4. Body Material: Cast iron.
5. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
6. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
7. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
8. Outlets: Bottom.
9. Outlet Types: No hub.
10. Extension Collars: Required.
11. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
12. Expansion Joint: Not required.
13. Sump Receiver Plate: Double.

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

14. Dome Materials: Aluminum.
15. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
16. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
17. Water Dam:
 - a. Primary Drains: Not required.
 - b. Overflow Drains: External 2 inches high.

F. Metal, Large-Sump, Promenade Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z150 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Dimension of Body: Nominal 12- to 14-inch diameter.
4. Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 12 to 14 inches square.
5. Outlet: Bottom.
6. Outlet Type: No hub.
7. Grate Material: [Nickel-bronze alloy.
8. Vandal-Proof Grate: Not required.
9. Extension Collars: Required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
12. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
13. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty
14. Sediment Bucket: Required.

G. Metal, Medium-Sump, Parking Deck Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z536-C-24 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Flange: Anchor.
4. Clamping Device: Required.
5. Integral Backwater Valve: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Outlet Type: No hub.
8. Grate Material: Cast or ductile iron.
9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 15 inches round.
10. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required.

H. Metal, Small-Sump, Deck Roof Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z533-C or comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

- a. [Josam Company.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
 - d. [Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
 3. Flange: Anchor .
 4. Clamping Device: Required.
 5. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required.
 6. Outlet: Bottom.
 7. Outlet Type: No hub.
 8. Grate Material: Cast or ductile iron.
 9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 8 inches round.
 10. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
 11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required.

2.02 AREA DRAINS

A. Metal, Small-Sump, Area Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z508 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Josam Company.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
 - d. [Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Flange: Anchor with weep holes.
4. Clamping Device: Required.
5. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Cast iron.
8. Grate Finish: Not required.
9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 9 inches round.
10. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Not required.

B. Metal, Small-Sump, Security-Type, Area Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn; Z508 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Josam Company.](#)
 - b. [MIFAB, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.](#)
 - d. [Watts Water Technologies, Inc.](#)
2. Body Material: Cast iron.
3. Flange: Anchor with weep holes.
4. Clamping Device: Required.
5. Integral Backwater Valve: Not required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Cast iron.
8. Grate Finish: Not required.
9. Overall Dimension of Frame and Grate: Nominal 9 inches round.

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

10. Top-Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
11. Vandal-Proof Frame and Grate: Required.

C. Cast-Iron, Security, Ligature-Resistant, Area Drains:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Watts; FD-1100-A-LR or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Josam Company; Josam Div.**
 - b. **Willoughby Industries.**
 - c. **Whitehall Manufacturing.**
2. Body: Gray iron, with seepage flange, anchoring flange, and clamping device.
3. Outlet: Bottom, no hub.
4. Inlet: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet.
5. Strainer: Stainless steel, heavy duty, ligature resistant, round, 6 inch

2.03 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Narrow, Sloped-Invert, Polymer-Concrete, Channel Drainage Systems:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ACO USA; KlassikDrain K100 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **ACO Polymer Products, Inc.**
 - b. **Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.**
 - c. **Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.**
2. Description: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps.
 - 1) Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
 - 2) Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - 3) Dimensions: 5-inch inside width and 9-3/4-inch inside depth. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 4) Frame: Galvanized steel for grates.
 - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - 1) Material: **[Ductile iron]** **[Stainless steel]**.
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas in accordance with roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
 - 3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- C. Assemble channel drainage system components in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- D. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FLASHING

- A. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07.
- B. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

3.04 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423.13

SECTION 221423.13 - STORM DRAINS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping and related specialties for general-service compressed-air systems:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Joining materials.
 - 3. Valves.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Flexible pipe connectors.
 - 6. Specialties.
 - 7. Quick couplings.
 - 8. Hose assemblies.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 221519 "General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers" for general-service air compressors and accessories.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- F. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- H. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures between 150 and 200 psig.
- I. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Piping: System of compressed-air piping and specialties operating at pressures of 150 psig or less.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Plastic pipes, fittings, and valves.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Flexible pipe connectors.
4. Safety valves.
5. Pressure regulators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
6. Automatic drain valves.
7. Filters. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
8. Lubricators. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
9. Quick couplings.
10. Hose assemblies.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. **Welding** certificates.
- B. Qualification Data: For installers.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For general-service compressed-air piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Extruded-Tee Outlet Procedure: Qualify operators according to training provided by T-DRILL Industries Inc., for making branch outlets.
 2. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Copper Tubing: Qualify operators according to training provided by Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
 3. Pressure-Seal Joining Procedure for Steel Piping. Qualify operators according to training provided by Victaulic Company.
 4. Joining Procedures for Aluminum Piping Systems: Qualify installers according to training provided by manufacturers.
- B. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 1. Comply with ASME B31.1, "Power Piping," for high-pressure compressed-air piping.
 2. Comply with ASME B31.3, "Process Piping," for high- and low-pressure compressed-air piping.
 3. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for low-pressure compressed-air piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40, Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B, black or hot-dip zinc coated with ends threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

1. Steel Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
2. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
3. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150 or 300, threaded.
4. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel, threaded.
5. Wrought-Steel Butt-Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, Schedule 40.
6. Steel Flanges: ASME B16.5, Class 150 or 300, carbon steel.
7. Couplings: AWWA C606 or UL 213, for steel-pipe dimensions and rated for 300-psig minimum working pressure. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for compressed air, and bolts and nuts. Provide EDPM gaskets for oil-free compressed air. Provide NBR gaskets if compressed air contains oil or oil vapor.

B. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L

1. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, solder-joint pressure type or MSS SP-73, wrought copper with dimensions for brazed joints.
2. Copper Unions: ASME B16.22 or MSS SP-123.

C. Transition Couplings for Metal Piping: Metal coupling or other manufactured fitting same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

2.02 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for compressed-air piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.03 VALVES

A. Metal Ball, Butterfly, Check, and Gate Valves: Comply with requirements in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2.04 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: **250 psig**.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.05 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTORS

- A. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Pipe Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
 - 2. End Connections, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.06 SPECIALTIES

- A. Safety Valves: ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," construction; National Board certified, labeled, and factory sealed; constructed of bronze body with poppet-type safety valve for compressed-air service.
 - 1. Pressure Settings: Higher than discharge pressure and same or lower than receiver pressure rating.
- B. Air-Main Pressure Regulators: Bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for **250-psig** inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Type: Pilot operated.
- C. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: **Diaphragm** operated, bronze body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for **200-psig** minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Air-Line Pressure Regulators: Diaphragm operated, aluminum alloy or plastic body, direct acting, spring-loaded manual pressure-setting adjustment, and rated for **200-psig** minimum inlet pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Automatic Drain Valves: Stainless-steel body and internal parts, rated for **200-psig** minimum working pressure, capable of automatic discharge of collected condensate. **Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.**
- F. Coalescing Filters: Coalescing type with activated carbon capable of removing water and oil aerosols; with color-change dye to indicate when carbon is saturated and warning light to indicate when selected maximum pressure drop has been exceeded. **Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.**
- G. Mechanical Filters: Two-stage, mechanical-separation-type, air-line filters. Equip with deflector plates, resin-impregnated-ribbon-type filters with edge filtration, and drain cock. **Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.**
- H. Air-Line Lubricators: With drip chamber and sight dome for observing oil drop entering air stream; with oil-feed adjustment screw and quick-release collar for easy bowl removal. **Include mounting bracket if wall mounting is indicated.**
 - 1. Provide with automatic feed device for supplying oil to lubricator.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

2.07 QUICK COUPLINGS

- A. General Requirements for Quick Couplings: Assembly with locking-mechanism feature for quick connection and disconnection of compressed-air hose.
- B. Automatic-Shutoff Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with O-ring or gasket seal and stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With one-way valve and threaded inlet for connection to piping or threaded hose fitting.
 - 2. Plug End: **Straight-through** type with barbed outlet for attaching hose.
- C. Valveless Quick Couplings: Straight-through brass body with stainless-steel or nickel-plated-steel operating parts.
 - 1. Socket End: With O-ring or gasket seal, without valve, and with barbed inlet for attaching hose.
 - 2. Plug End: With barbed outlet for attaching hose.

2.08 HOSE ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Compatible hose, clamps, couplings, and splicers suitable for compressed-air service, of nominal diameter indicated, and rated for **300-psig** minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Hose: Reinforced **double**-wire-braid, CR-covered hose for compressed-air service.
 - 2. Hose Clamps: Stainless-steel clamps or bands.
 - 3. Hose Couplings: Two-piece, straight-through, threaded brass or stainless-steel O-ring or gasket-seal swivel coupling with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.
 - 4. Hose Splicers: One-piece, straight-through brass or stainless-steel fitting with barbed ends for connecting two sections of hose.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Compressed-Air Piping between Air Compressors and Receivers: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Low-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- C. High-Pressure Compressed-Air Distribution Piping: Use one of the following piping materials for each size range:

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

1. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
2. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4**: Schedule 40, **galvanized**-steel pipe; threaded, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.

D. Drain Piping: Use the following piping materials:

1. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Type M copper tube; wrought-copper fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.

3.02 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Metal General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements and use valve types specified in "Valve Applications" Articles in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping," according to the following:

1. Low-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for low-pressure compressed air.
2. High-Pressure Compressed Air: Valve types specified for medium-pressure compressed air.
- 3.

3.03 PIPING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of compressed-air piping. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, air-compressor sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal and to coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- E. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- F. Install air and drain piping with 1 percent slope downward in direction of flow.
- G. Install nipples, flanges, unions, transition and special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Equipment and Specialty Flanged Connections:
 1. Use steel companion flange with gasket for connection to steel pipe.
- I. Flanged joints may be used instead of specified joint for any piping or tubing system.
- J. Extended-tee outlets with brazed branch connection may be used for copper tubing, within extruded-tee connection diameter to run tube diameter ratio for tube type, according to Extruded Tee Connections Sizes and Wall Thickness for Copper Tube (Inches) Table in ASTM F 2014.
- K. Install eccentric reducers where compressed-air piping is reduced in direction of flow, with bottoms of both pipes and reducer fitting flush.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

- L. Install branch connections to compressed-air mains from top of main. Provide drain leg and drain trap at end of each main and branch and at low points.
- M. Install thermometer and pressure gage on discharge piping from each air compressor and on each receiver. Comply with requirements in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints for Steel Piping: Join according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M.
- E. Flanged Joints: Use asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket suitable for compressed air. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9 for bolting procedure.
- F. Dissimilar Metal Piping Material Joints: Use dielectric fittings.

3.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valves and unions or flanged joints at compressed-air piping to air compressors.
- C. Install shutoff valve at inlet to each automatic drain valve, filter, lubricator, and pressure regulator.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

- D. Install check valves to maintain correct direction of compressed-air flow to and from compressed-air piping specialties and equipment.

3.06 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. **NPS 2** and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.07 FLEXIBLE PIPE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible pipe connectors in discharge piping **and in inlet air piping from remote air-inlet filter** of each air compressor.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible pipe connectors in copper compressed-air tubing.
- C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible pipe connectors in steel compressed-air piping.

3.08 SPECIALTY INSTALLATION

- A. Install safety valves on receivers in quantity and size to relieve at least the capacity of connected air compressors.
- B. Install air-main pressure regulators in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors.
- C. Install air-line pressure regulators in branch piping to equipment **and tools**.
- D. Install automatic drain valves on aftercoolers, receivers, and dryers. Discharge condensate onto nearest floor drain.
- E. Install coalescing filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and upstream from mechanical filters. **Mount on wall at locations indicated.**
- F. Install mechanical filters in compressed-air piping at or near air compressors and downstream from coalescing filters. **Mount on wall at locations indicated.**
- G. Install air-line lubricators in branch piping to machine tools. **Mount on wall at locations indicated.**
- H. Install quick couplings at piping terminals for hose connections.
- I. Install hose assemblies at hose connections.

3.09 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.
- B. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment and machine.

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

3.10 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support devices.
- C. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
- D. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - 1. 100 Feet or Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - 2. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
- E. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
- F. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- G. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting and coupling.
- H. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- I. Install hangers for Schedule 40, steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1/4 to NPS 1/2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2: 12 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2: 13 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 2-1/2: 14 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 3: 15 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 3-1/2: 16 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 8. NPS 4: 17 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 9. NPS 5: 19 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 10. NPS 6: 21 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 11. NPS 8: 24 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 12. NPS 10: 26 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
 - 13. NPS 12: 30 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical, Schedule 40, steel piping every 15 feet.

3.11 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install identifying labels and devices for general-service compressed-air piping, valves, and specialties. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

SECTION 221513 - GENERAL-SERVICE COMPRESSED-AIR PIPING (continued):

1. Piping Leak Tests for Metal Compressed-Air Piping: Test new and modified parts of existing piping. Cap and fill general-service compressed-air piping with oil-free dry air or gaseous nitrogen to pressure of 50 psig above system operating pressure, but not less than **150 psig**. Isolate test source and let stand for four hours to equalize temperature. Refill system, if required, to test pressure; hold for two hours with no drop in pressure.
 2. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Inspect **filters, lubricators and pressure regulators** for proper operation.
- C. Prepare test reports.

END OF SECTION 221513

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
 - 3. Flow-control, electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
 - 4. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of electric, domestic-water heater.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year.
 - b. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year.
 - c. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: Five year(s).
 - d. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.02 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

- d. [PVI: A WATTS Brand.](#)
 - e. [State Industries.](#)
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 1453.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges, and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
 - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
- B. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
- 1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [A. O. Smith Corporation.](#)
 - b. [Lochinvar, LLC.](#)
 - c. [State Industries.](#)
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 174.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

- a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
6. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction with legs for off-floor installation.

2.03 ELECTRIC, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Flow-Control, Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bosch Thermotechnology Corp.
 - b. Chronomite Laboratories, Inc; a division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Eemax, Inc.; a Rheem brand.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
3. Standard: UL 499 for electric, tankless, (domestic-water-heater) heating appliance.
4. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - a. Connections: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Heating Element: Resistance heating system.
 - d. Temperature Control: Flow-control fitting.
 - e. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - f. Jacket: Aluminum or steel with enameled finish or plastic.
5. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.04 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. AMTROL, Inc.
 - c. State Industries.

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

- d. [Taco Comfort Solutions](#).
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
- 4. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.
 - c. Air Precharge Pressure: 40 psig.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- E. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- F. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- G. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.
- H. Domestic-Water Heater Suspended Platform:
 - 1. [Basis-of-Design Product](#): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Holdrite QuickStand 50-SWHP-WM](#) or approved equal.
 - 2. Corrosion-resistant metal platform not less than the base of the water heater for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Platform shall have raised edge and NPS 1 metal drain fitting with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads to serve as a drain pan.

2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Division 03.
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
- B. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install electric, tankless, domestic-water heaters on wall bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 22 05 23.11 "General Duty Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Domestic Water Piping."
- G. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- H. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- J. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

3.02 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Urinals.
3. Lavatories.
4. Sinks.
5. Water coolers, drinking fountains, and bottle filling stations.
6. Showers.
7. Bathtubs.
8. Service sinks and basins.
9. Outlet boxes.
10. Grout.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures and accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flush-o-meter-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.
2. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
3. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
4. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size of water cooler indicated, but no fewer than one of each.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WATER CLOSETS

A. Fixture (WC-#):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **American Standard.**
 - b. **Kohler Co.**
 - c. **TOTO USA, Inc.**
 - d. **Zurn Industries.**

B. Accessories:

1. Flushometer: Valve or tank, as indicated on Drawings.
2. Toilet Seat: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Water Closet Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
 - a. ASME A112.6.1M, waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
 - b. Water-Closet Mounting Height: As indicated in drawings.

2.02 URINALS

A. Fixture (UR-#):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **American Standard.**
 - b. **Kohler Co.**
 - c. **Sloan Valve Company.**
 - d. **TOTO USA, Inc.**
 - e. **Zurn Industries.**

B. Accessories:

1. Flushometer Valve: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Urinal Carrier:
 - a. ASME A112.6.1M. with fixture support plates and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
 - b. Urinal Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

2.03 LAVATORIES

A. Fixture (LV-#):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **American Standard.**
 - b. **Bradley Corporation.**
 - c. **Kohler Co.**
 - d. **TOTO USA, Inc.**
 - e. **Zurn Industries.**

B. Accessories:

1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: As indicated on Drawings (for tempered water applications only).
3. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping and either wheel or cross handle operation.
 - c. Risers: ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.
5. Lavatory Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
 - a. ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier with rectangular, steel uprights.
 - b. Lavatory Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.04 SINKS

A. Fixture (SK-#):

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Elkay Manufacturing Company.**
 - b. **Fiat Products.**
 - c. **Franke Group.**
 - d. **Just Manufacturing Company.**

B. Accessories:

1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

4. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping and either wheel or cross handle operation.
 - c. Risers: ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.
5. Sink Carrier (for Wall-Mounted Applications):
 - a. ASME A112.6.1M, Type II, concealed-arm sink carrier with rectangular, steel uprights.
 - b. Sink Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.05 WATER COOLERS, DRINKING FOUNTAINS, & BOTTLE FILLING STATIONS

- A. Fixture (EWC-#, DF-#, or BFS-#):
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Halsey Taylor.
 - c. Haws Corporation.
 - d. Oasis International.
- B. Accessories:
 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2 / CSA B125.2, brass P-trap.
 3. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
 - c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
 4. Water Cooler Carrier:
 - a. ASME A112.6.1M with fixture support plates and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
 - b. Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.06 SHOWERS

- A. Fixture (SH-#):
 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

- c. [Comfort Designs.](#)
- d. [Just Manufacturing Company.](#)
- e. [Zurn Industries.](#)

B. Accessories:

- 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
 - c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- 4. Shower Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.07 BATHTUBS

A. Fixture (BT-#):

- 1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [American Standard.](#)
 - b. [Kohler Co.](#)

B. Accessories:

- 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Filler Spout: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
 - c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- 5. Shower Mounting Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.08 SERVICE SINKS & BASINS

A. Fixture (MSB-#):

- 1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

- a. Fiat Products.
- b. Stern Williams Co., Inc.

B. Accessories:

- 1. Faucet: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Rim Guard: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Flexible Hose: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4. Mop Hanger: As indicated on Drawings.
- 5. Waste Fittings: As indicated on Drawings.
- 6. Supply Fittings:
 - a. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
 - b. Supply Stops: Comply with requirements in Section 22 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Domestic Water Piping."
 - c. Supply Piping: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1, copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

2.09 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes (LHB)

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Guy Gray; IPS Corporation.
 - b. Oatey.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
- 3. Material and Finish: White powder-coated steel box and faceplate.
- 4. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
- 5. Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 2.
- 6. Accessory: Water hammer arresters.
- 7. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
- 8. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber, household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
- 9. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber, household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes (IMB):

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Guy Gray; IPS Corporation.
 - b. Oatey.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
- 3. Material and Finish: White powder-coated steel box and faceplate.
- 4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
- 5. Accessory: Water hammer arrestor.
- 6. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

2.10 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing-fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, cabinets, and counters for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

- 1. Install water closets level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
- 3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
- 4. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- 5. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, wall-mounted water closets.
- 6. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
- 7. Install toilet seats on water closets.

B. Urinal Installation:

- 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
- 3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC / ANSI A117.1.
- 4. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
- 5. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
- 6. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
- 7. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

C. Flush-o-meter-Valve Installation:

- 1. Install flush-o-meter-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet and urinal.
- 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
- 3. Install lever-handle flush-o-meter valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
5. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Lavatories:

1. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
3. Install counter-mounting lavatories in and attached to casework.
4. Indicate on Drawing those lavatories that are required to be accessible.
5. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
6. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
7. Install traps on fixture outlets.
8. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19.14 "Insulation for ADA Plumbing Fixtures."

E. Sinks:

1. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
3. Install counter-mounting sinks in and attached to casework.
4. Indicate on Drawings those sinks that are required to be accessible.
5. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped / elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
6. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
7. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
8. Install traps on fixture outlets.
9. Install unions on inlets and outlets of point-of-use sediment interceptors and dilution tanks.
10. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have a disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
11. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 22 07 19.14 "Insulation for ADA Plumbing Fixtures."

F. Showers:

1. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
3. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
4. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
5. Set shower receptors and shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
6. Install traps on fixture outlets.

G. Bathtubs:

1. Assemble bathtub components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Install bathtubs level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
3. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each faucet.
4. Install tub/shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates.
5. Set bathtubs in leveling bed of cement grout.
6. Install traps on fixture outlets.

H. Water Coolers, Drinking Fountains, and Bottle Filling Stations:

1. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

2. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
 3. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers to mounting frames.
 4. Install traps on fixture outlets.
- I. Outlet Boxes: Install boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 1-1/2-by-3-1/2-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06.
- J. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- K. Joint Sealing:
1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets and urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Connect lavatories, sinks, water coolers, and showers with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 22 13 16 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to plumbing fixture, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust plumbing fixtures and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning plumbing fixtures, accessories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flush-o-meter valves and faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of plumbing fixtures, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean plumbing fixtures, accessories, and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES (continued):

- C. Install protective covering for installed plumbing fixtures, accessories, and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224200

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 23 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning systems.
- B. Related Work:
 - 1. Division 02 – Existing Conditions
 - a. Refer to Division 02 for demolition and for abatement of hazardous materials.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 02 for selective demolition.
 - 2. Division 03 – Concrete
 - a. Refer to Division 03 for rough grouting in and around work, patching concrete cut to accommodate work, and sumps for work.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 03 for curbs, foundations, inertia bases, and equipment pads for equipment.
 - 3. Division 05 – Metals
 - a. Refer to Division 05 for framed openings for equipment.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 05 for supports for work.
 - 4. Division 06 – Wood, Plastics, and Composites
 - a. Refer to Division 06 for framed openings for equipment.
 - 5. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection
 - a. Refer to Division 07 for installation of roof curbs and roof supports and for caulking and waterproofing of wall- and roof-mounted work.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 07 for penetration firestopping and furnishing roof curbs and roof supports for equipment and piping.
 - 6. Division 08 – Openings
 - a. Refer to Division 08 for installation of access doors and frames and for louvers and vents.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 08 for access doors and frames and for louvers and vents, unless otherwise included in the Contract Documents.
 - 7. Division 09 – Finishes
 - a. Refer to Division 09 for paint products and applications in finished spaces.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 09 for paint products and applications identified in the Contract Documents.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

8. Division 10 – Specialties
 - a. Refer to Division 10 for fire protection cabinets and fire extinguishers.
9. Division 21 – Fire Suppression
 - a. Refer to Division 21 for all suppression work.
10. Division 22 – Plumbing
 - a. Refer to Division 22 for all plumbing work.
 - b. Comply with requirements of Division 22 for related equipment and components and for connections to systems.
11. Division 25 – Instrumentation and Control
 - a. Refer to Division 25 for instrumentation and control systems.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 25 for installation of and integration with instrumentation and control components.
12. Division 26 – Electrical
 - a. Refer to Division 26 for all electrical work.
13. Division 27 – Communications
 - a. Refer to Division 27 for all communications work.
14. Division 28 – Electronic Safety and Security
 - a. Refer to Division 28 for all electronic safety and security work.
 - b. Coordinate with Division 28 for integration with security systems.
15. Division 29 – Fire Safety and Emergency Communications
 - a. Refer to Division 29 for all fire safety and emergency communications work.
 - b. Coordinate with Division 29 for integration with fire safety and emergency communications systems.
16. Division 31 – Earthwork
 - a. Refer to Division 31 for all site related work greater than five feet outside the building, unless noted otherwise in the Contract Documents.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 31 for site clearing, earth moving, and dewatering within five feet outside the building and otherwise as indicated in the Contract Documents.
17. Division 33 – Utilities
 - a. Refer to Division 33 for all utility related work greater than five feet outside the building, unless noted otherwise in the Contract Documents.
 - b. Comply with the requirements of Division 33 for utility work within five feet outside the building and otherwise as indicated in the Contract Documents.

1.03 **DEFINITIONS**

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment
- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. ASHRAE
 - a. Standard 15 Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems - 2019
 - b. Standard 55 Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy – 2017
 - c. Standard 62.1 Ventilation Standard for Acceptable Indoor air Quality - 2019
 - d. Standard 170 Ventilation of Health Care Facilities - 2017
 - e. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential Buildings - 2019
 - 2. ASME

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- a. Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code - 2019
 - 1) Section I Rules for Construction of Power Boilers
 - 2) Section IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers
 - 3) Section VIII Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels
- b. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators - 2019
- c. ASME A17.3 Safety Code for Existing Elevators and Escalators - 2020
- 3. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
- 4. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code - 2021
 - c. NFPA 30A Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages - 2020
 - d. NFPA 31 Standards for Oil Burning Equipment - 2020
 - e. NFPA 33 Standard for Spray Application Using Flammable or Combustible Materials - 2018
 - f. NFPA 45 Standard on Fire Protection for Laboratories using Chemicals - 2019
 - g. NFPA 52 Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code – 2019
 - h. NFPA 54 National Fuel Gas Code – 2021
 - i. NFPA 58 Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code - 2020
 - j. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - k. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 - l. NFPA 90A Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems - 2021
 - m. NFPA 90B Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems - 2021
 - n. NFPA 91 Standard for the Installation of Blower and Exhaust Systems - 2020
 - o. NFPA 92 Standard for Smoke Control Systems – 2018
 - p. NFPA 96 Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations – 2021
 - q. NFPA 99 Standard for Health Care Facilities - 2021
 - r. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - s. NFPA 150 Standard on Fire and Life Safety in Animal Housing Facilities – 2019
 - t. NFPA 204 Standard for Smoke and Heat Venting - 2018
 - u. NFPA 232 Standard for the Protection of Records – 2017
 - v. NFPA 654 Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing, and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids – 2020
 - w. NFPA 704 Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response – 2017
 - x. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2020
- 5. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Existing Building Code
 - c. Energy Conservation Code
 - d. Mechanical Code
 - e. Plumbing Code
 - f. Fuel Gas Code
 - g. Accessibility Code
- 6. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 - 7. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 6A-2 Educational Facilities
 - b. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - c. Chapter 59A-3 Hospital Licensure
 - d. Chapter 59A-4 Minimum Standards for Nursing Homes
 - e. Chapter 59A-5 Ambulatory Surgical Center Licensure
 - f. Chapter 61C-5 Florida Elevator Safety Code
 - g. Chapter 61G15-34 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Mechanical Systems
 - h. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - i. Chapter 69A-47 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Elevators
 - j. Chapter 69A-53 Uniform Fire Safety Standards for Hospitals and Nursing Homes
 - k. Chapter 69A-58 Fire Safety in Educational Facilities
 - l. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 - 8. International Building Code, 2024 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Existing Building Code
 - c. Energy Conservation Code
 - d. Fire Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Green Construction Code
 - g. Mechanical Code
 - h. Plumbing Code
 - i. Accessibility Code
 - j. Private Sewage Disposal Code
 - k. Swimming Pool and Spa Code
 - 9. Georgia Fire Standards
 - 10. Georgia Accessibility Code 120-3-20
 - 11. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
 - B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
 - C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
 - D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.
- 1.06 **REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS**
- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
 - B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 9. Electrical Modifications:
 - a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the HVAC systems at the time of design.
 - b. If HVAC equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
 - c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.
- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- D. Submittal Review Fees:
1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.13 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
 - 1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 - 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
 - 1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 - 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 - 4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.14 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 - 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 - 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

1.15 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 - 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 - 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.16 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

1.17 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.
- E. Interruption of Service: Before any existing equipment or system is shut down for disconnecting or tie-ins, coordinate with Engineer and Owner regarding acceptable dates and times for this Work to be performed. Work shall be performed at the time best suited for the Owner, which typically is either on weekends, holidays, and/or after normal working hours. Services shall be restored the same day unless prior arrangements are made. All overtime or premium costs associated with this Work shall be included in the Contractor's bid.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

G. Obstructions

1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.

I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:

1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.

J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.

K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.

L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

3.07 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FINISHES, CARPET, AND FURNISHING

A. Protect existing finishes, carpet, casework, furnishing, and other building components against damage and soiling throughout construction activities. Take care during construction not to damage existing items. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing damaged material or restoring damaged materials to the Owner's satisfaction.

B. When permitted by Engineer, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during construction and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- C. Furniture may be relocated during construction and reinstalled in their original locations after construction operations are complete.
- D. Means and methods for protection are the responsibility of the Contractor. Utilize plywood, polyethylene sheeting, dust cloths, and other means as required.

3.08 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
 - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

3.09 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 - 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.
- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 23. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - 1. Uninsulated Metal Piping (bare copper piping not required to be painted unless noted otherwise):
 - a. Condenser Water: Green
 - b. Other: To be determined by Engineer
 - 2. Uninsulated plastic piping
 - 3. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 - 4. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - 1. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having a cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material, as outlined in individual Specification Sections.
 - 2. Other items as directed by Engineer.
- E. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.11 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Furnish a letter from an authorized factory representative of the air conditioning unit manufacturer stating that the complete refrigeration installation including pipe sizing and routing and operating and safety controls has been checked and is operating properly.
- C. Tests

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR HVAC (continued):

1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.
 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.13 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

3.14 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of systems and equipment Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

END OF SECTION 230100

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Power factor: 0.80.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT (continued):

- F. Bearings: Re-greasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.04 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers:
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
- B. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- C. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- D. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Grout.
 - 3. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 07 for penetration Firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.02 GROUT

- A. Description: Non-shrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING (continued):

- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi (34.5-MPa)**, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.03 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.
 - 1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.
- B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and non-traffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 - 1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.
 - 1. **Sealant shall have a VOC** content of 250 g/L or less.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **2-inch (50-mm)** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches (50 mm)** above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING (continued):

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified Division 07.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.03 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Steel pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
 2. Exterior Concrete Walls Below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 20 (DN 500)**: Sleeve-seal fittings with sleeve-seal system..
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **2-inch (50-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping **NPS 22 (DN 550)** and Larger: Hole-forming system with sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **2-inch (50-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 20 (DN 500)**: Sleeve-seal fittings with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **2-inch (50-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping **NPS 22 (DN 550)** and Larger: Hole-forming system with sleeve-seal systems.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for **2-inch (50-mm)** annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 4. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Steel pipe sleeves.

SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING (continued):

- b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than **NPS 6 (DN 150)**: Steel pipe sleeves .
 - b. Piping **NPS 6 (DN 150)** and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and polished brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.02 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.
- B. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING (continued):

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with rough-brass finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: Split floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Fastener systems.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Pipe stands.
 - 4. Insulation couplings.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

2.02 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.03 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.04 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.](#)
 - b. [Flex-Strut Inc.](#)
 - c. [Unistrut Corporation](#); Tyco International, Ltd.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc indoors and Hot-dip galvanized outdoors.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

2.05 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.06 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.07 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: **ASTM B 221** (**ASTM B 221M**).
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011 / A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36 / A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240 / A 240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C 1107 / C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, non-shrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: **5000-psi** (**34.5-MPa**), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb** (**90 kg**).

3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36 / A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1 / D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
1. Install insulation couplings for pipes mounted to metal framing systems based on pipe size and insulation material. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on metal framing system.
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: For pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller
 - b. Mineral Fiber Insulation: For pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller
 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on piping not using insulation couplings. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees. Secure shield to pipe on both ends with stainless steel bands.
 3. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

- d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.

3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.04 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 / D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.06 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780 / A 780M.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750)**.
 - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes **NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600)** if little or no insulation is required.
 - 3. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes **NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900)**, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 4. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600)**, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 5. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes **NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050)** if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers **NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600)**.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
 - 2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
 - 3. Elastomeric hangers.
 - 4. Spring hangers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
 - 1. Include design calculations for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and seismic and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 - 3. Wind-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of wind restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
 - c. Coordinate wind-restraint details with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC (continued):

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason Super W or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.

2.02 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

- A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason ND or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
2. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.03 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; Mason HD or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC (continued):

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.04 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mason Industries, Inc.; HS-B or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.**
 - b. **Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.**
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03.
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

3.03 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC (continued):

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Ceiling marker labels.
 - 3. Warning signs and labels.
 - 4. Pipe labels.
 - 5. Stencils.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.
- E. Control System Diagrams and Descriptions: For each control system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and propor-

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- tionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, tabulate equipment label information. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.02 CEILING MARKER LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Clear.
- D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- F. Label Content: Include either the equipment tag identifier or a clear description of the concealed component, along with the system or service abbreviation. Label content shall match identifiers shown on Drawings or be descriptive enough for field recognition and maintenance access.
 - 1. System of Service Abbreviations: "CHW, HHW, CW, STEAM, HVAC".
 - 2. Components: "VALVE, BALANCE VALVE, FIRE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER, CONTROL DAMPER".

2.03 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

2.04 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.05 STENCILS

- A. Stencils for Ducts:
 - 1. Lettering Size: Minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for viewing distances up to 15 feet (4-1/2 m) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
 - 2. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
 - 3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

2.06 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.07 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.03 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.04 CEILING MARKER LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply labels for each concealed major item of mechanical equipment or component requiring service or maintenance.
- B. Align labels neatly, parallel to ceiling edges or panel orientation.
- C. Apply after ceiling installation and verification of concealed item locations.
- D. Do not install labels on surfaces subject to frequent replacement or repainting without coordination.
- E. Locate ceiling marker labels where accessible and visible.
- F. Application Locations:
 - 1. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings (ACT):
 - a. Apply label to the face of the ceiling grid tee directly adjacent to or centered over the concealed item.
 - b. If grid location is not feasible, affix to accessible tile surface, avoiding any tile likely to be replaced or removed.
 - 2. Gypsum Board or Hard-Lid Ceilings with Access Panels:
 - a. Apply label directly to the surface of the access panel.
 - b. Label shall be centered, upright, and clearly legible from floor level.
 - 3. Exposed Ceilings or Open Structures:
 - a. Apply label to the nearest permanent building surface or equipment mounting plate visible from below.
 - b. If no surface is available, affix to suspended tag or placard mounted below the item.
 - 4. Multiple Components at Single Access Location:

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

- a. Use a single label listing all concealed components above the ceiling at that location, aligned vertically or in column format.
- b. Use consistent labeling format and spacing.

3.05 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.
 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** along each run. Reduce intervals to **25 feet (7.6 m)** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions. Install marker tape with arrows around the entire circumference of the pipe at the beginning and end of the pipe-label content.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 2. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 3. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 4. Glycol/Brine-Water Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 5. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 6. Low-Pressure Steam Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.
 7. High-Pressure Steam Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.
 8. Steam Condensate Piping: White letters on a safety-purple background.
 9. Fuel Gas Piping: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.

3.06 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Duct Label: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of **50 feet (15 m)** in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.07 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Condensing units.
 - b. Heat-transfer coils.
 - 3. Smoke Control Systems:
 - a. Elevator shaft systems.
 - b. Stairwell shaft systems.
 - 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
 - 5. Duct leakage tests.
 - 6. Control system verification.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.
- H. Special Inspector: An entity engaged to inspect smoke control systems.

1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

1. Minimum Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report Format Submittals: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the following as specified in "Preparation" Article.
 1. TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures.
 2. System readiness checklists.
- C. Certified TAB reports: Submit a minimum of 14 days prior to scheduled Substantial Completion.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- B. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- C. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 1. Instrument type and make.
 2. Serial number.
 3. Application.
 4. Dates of use.
 5. Dates of calibration.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB.
 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB. A TAB Field Supervisor shall be on the project site at all times during TAB work and shall have a minimum three years' of TAB experience with air, water, sound, and vibration testing.
 - a. NEBB: Certified Professional (TAB-CP) or Certified Technician (TAB-CT).
 - b. AABC: Certified Test and Balance Engineer (TBE) or Certified Technician.
 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
 - a. NEBB: Certified Technician (TAB-CT).
 - b. AABC: Certified Technician.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- E. Warranty: Comply with the program requirements of either:
 - 1. AABC National Performance Guaranty.
 - 2. NEBB Conformance Certification.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.09 TAB CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- B. Participate in verification of the TAB report by the CxA or Engineer for verification and diagnostic purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, engage one of the following:
 - 1. FTS Test and Balance
 - a. Location: Tallahassee, Florida
 - b. Contact: Heath Allbaugh, CP
 - c. Phone Number: (850) 519-7845
 - 2. HVAC Testing Services, Inc.
 - a. Location: Thomasville, Georgia
 - b. Contact: Greg Lang, CP / Pete Lang
 - c. Phone Number: (229) 227-0255
 - 3. Indoor Air Professionals, Inc.
 - a. Location: Fort Myers, Florida
 - b. Contact: Joseph Molloy, III, CP
 - c. Phone Number: (239) 707-9732
 - 4. Dynamic Analysis, Inc.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

- a. Location: Pensacola, Florida
- b. Contact: Brian Barr, CP
- c. Phone Number: (850) 492-8325

5. W.W. Gay Mechanical

- a. Location: Jacksonville, Florida
- b. Contact: Don Eshelman, CP
- c. Phone Number: (904) 394-7298

3.02 **EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- K. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.03 **PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

4. Project specific forms with specific identification for all equipment and systems. Project specific forms shall include design data for all equipment and systems to be tested and descriptions of any other necessary supporting data required in the final report that will be included (i.e. fan/pump curves, layout drawings, balancing valve charts, etc).
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.04 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", ASHRAE 111, or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" , and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.05 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.06 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
 - 6. Determine and make appropriate modifications for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Re-adjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.07 **PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS**

A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.08 **PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS**

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.09 **PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS**

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.

3.10 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.11 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.12 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 5. Smoke Control Systems: Plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.13 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.14 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
4. Include warranty certificate meeting the requirements of one of the following programs:
 - a. AABC – National Performance Guaranty
 - b. NEBB – Conformance Certification

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves, marked with operating conditions.
2. Fan curves, marked with operating conditions.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - e. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - f. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - g. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - h. Return-air damper position.
- E. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
 - b. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Voltage at each connection.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

- g. Amperage for each phase.
- F. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
 - 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - h. Belt tension in lbs.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- G. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- H. Instrument Calibration Reports:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC (continued):

- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.15 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. At Engineer's option, Engineer shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- B. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- C. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- D. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
 - 3. If the second verification also fails, design professional may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty or NEBB Headquarters regarding the NEBB Conformance Certification.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.16 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, supply, return, and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail application for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application for each type of insulation.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," and "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

2.02 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

- c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.](#)
 - d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.](#)
 - 2. [Fiberglass adhesive shall have a](#) VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. [Adhesive shall comply with the](#) testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 1. [Products:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.](#)
 - b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.](#)
 - 2. [Adhesive shall have a VOC](#) content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. [Adhesive shall comply with the](#) testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.03 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 1. [VOC Content:](#) 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
- 1. [Products:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.](#)
 - b. [Vimasco Corporation; 749.](#)
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
- 1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; CP-10.](#)
 - b. [Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.](#)

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

- c. [Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; 46-50.](#)
- d. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc; 55-50.](#)
2. [Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.](#) Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than **1.0 perm** at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.**
4. Color: White.

2.04 SEALANTS

A. FSK Flashing Sealants:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.](#)[Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.](#)
 - b. [Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.](#)
 - c. [Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.](#)
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.**
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. [Sealant shall have a VOC](#) content of 420 g/L or less.
7. [Sealant shall comply with the](#) testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants:

1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.](#)
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.**
5. Color: White.
6. [Sealant shall have a VOC](#) content of 420 g/L or less.
7. [Sealant shall comply with the](#) testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.05 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

2.06 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products; Chil-Glas Number 5.

2.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

2.08 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - 2. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.09 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

1. Aluminum: **ASTM B209**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, **0.020 inch** thick, **1/2 inch** wide with wing seal.
2. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
 - 2) Gemco.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, **0.030 inch** thick by **2 inches** square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, **0.106-inch**-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from **0.016-inch**-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than **1-1/2 inches** in diameter.
 - a. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
 - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
 - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal **3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.**

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with **3-inch**-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced **4 inches** o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least **1-1/2 inches**. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **4 inches** o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

- M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least **2 inches** below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least **2 inches**.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least **2 inches**.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with insulation pins.
 - 1. Install metal, adhesively attached, perforated-base insulation hangers on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions **18 inches** and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space **3 inches** maximum from insulation end joints, and **16 inches** o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than **18 inches**, place pins **16 inches** o.c. each way, and **3 inches** maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

- e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
2. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing **2 inches** from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with **1/2-inch** outward-clinching staples, **1 inch** o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below **50 deg F** at **18-foot** intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than **3 inches**.
3. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of **2 inches** on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of **18 inches** o.c.
4. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
5. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with **6-inch**-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced **6 inches** o.c.

3.06 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
- 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with **2-inch** overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two **0.062-inch**-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
- 1. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 2. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

3.07 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below .
- 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.08 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

SECTION 230713.11 - INSULATION FOR INDOOR GENERAL HVAC DUCTS (continued):

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply, return, and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply, return, and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.09 **INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE**

A. Supply, return, and outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2-3/16 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713.11

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors and outdoors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.](#)
 - b. [Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.](#)
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.](#)
 - b. [Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.](#)
 - c. [Foster Brand](#), Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. [K-Flex USA](#); R-373 Contact Adhesive.

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. **VOC Content:** 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Foster Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80 / 30-90.
 - b. **Vimasco Corporation**; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Childers Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. **Foster Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95 / 60-96.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.**
 - 4. Color: White.

2.4 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Childers Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. **ITW Insulation Systems**; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. **RPR Products, Inc.**; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B209**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
- b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
- c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **2.5-mil**-thick polysurlyn.
- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: .
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.5 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **ITW Insulation Systems;** Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. **RPR Products, Inc.;** Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch** thick, **1/2 inch** wide with wing seal.
- B. Wire: **0.062-inch** soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Below Ambient Systems.
 - 1. Provide continuous vapor barrier; seal joints, longitudinal seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 2. Where mastic is indicated provide vapor-barrier mastic as required for indoor or outdoor application.
 - 3. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches** o.c. and at end joints.
- B. Where PVC piping is installed in a plenum, install plenum fire resistant wrap over PVC piping. Install plenum fire resistant wrap over any PVC piping insulated with flexible elastomeric insulated, if installed in a plenum.

3.7 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
 1. White.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below **60 Deg F**:
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **3/4 inch** thick.

3.10 OUTDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.

3.11 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

B. Piping, Exposed:

1. None.

3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

C. Piping, Exposed:

1. Aluminum, Stucco embossed: 0.024 inchthick.

END OF SECTION 230719.11

SECTION 230719.11 - INSULATION FOR CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail application of field-applied jackets.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C795.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. [Aeroflex USA, Inc.](#); Aerocel.
 - b. [Armacell LLC](#); AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Aeroflex USA, Inc.](#); Aeroseal.
 - b. [Armacell LLC](#); Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. [Foster Brand](#), Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. [K-Flex USA](#); R-373 Contact Adhesive.

2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. **VOC Content:** 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Low-Emitting Materials: Mastic coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Foster Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80 / 30-90.
 - b. **Vimasco Corporation**; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.**
 - 4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Childers Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. **Foster Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95 / 60-96.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.**
 - 4. Color: White.

2.4 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **Childers Brand**, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. **ITW Insulation Systems**; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. **RPR Products, Inc.**; Insul-Mate.
 - 2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with **ASTM B209**, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: **2.5-mil**-thick polysurlyn.

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: .
- e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.5 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. **ITW Insulation Systems;** Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. **RPR Products, Inc.;** Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; **0.015 inch** thick, **1/2 inch** wide with wing seal.
- B. Wire: **0.062-inch** soft-annealed, stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Below Ambient Systems.
 - 1. Provide continuous vapor barrier; seal joints, longitudinal seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 2. Where mastic is indicated provide vapor-barrier mastic as required for indoor or outdoor application.
 - 3. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least **2 inches**.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with **2-inch** overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands **12 inches** o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Color per schedule below.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Engineer. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
 - 1. White.
- C. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch** thick.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch** thick.

3.10 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch** thick.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Flexible Elastomeric: **1 inch** thick.

3.11 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

C. Piping, Exposed:

1. None.

3.12 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. Aluminum, Stucco embossed: **0.024 inch** thick.

END OF SECTION 230719.16

SECTION 230719.16 - INSULATION FOR REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following HVAC systems, assemblies, and equipment:
 - 1. Heating and cooling terminal and unitary equipment.
 - 2. HVAC controls.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.
 - 2. For construction checklists, comply with requirements in various Division 23 Sections specifying HVAC systems, system components, equipment, and products.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Division 01 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- D. FPT: Functional Performance Test. Test of dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, life safety conditions, power failure, etc. Systems are run through all specified sequences of operation.
- E. DDC: Direct digital controls.
- F. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.
- G. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.
- H. SVC: System Verification Checklist. A list of static inspections and elementary component tests that verify proper installation of equipment (e.g., belt tension, oil levels, labels affixed, gauges in place, sensors calibrated, etc.).
- I. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

1.04 HVAC CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Ensure that all Division 23 sub-contractors execute their commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents and schedule.
- B. Perform commissioning functional performance tests at the direction of the CxA.
- C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- D. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC (continued):

- E. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- F. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- G. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.05 TAB CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- B. Participate in verification of the TAB report by the CxA for verification and diagnostic purposes.

1.06 BUILDING AUTOMATION CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Review design for controllability with respect to equipment selected for the project. Review and confirm in writing that a proper hardware specification exists to permit functional performance testing as required by specification and sequence of operation.
- B. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- C. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- D. Inspect, check, and confirm the correct installation and operation of input and output field points and devices through documented and signed off point-to-point checkouts.
- E. Provide support and coordination with TAB Contractor on all interfaces between controls and TAB scopes of work. Provide, at no additional cost to the TAB and commissioning agencies, all devices, such as portable operator's terminals and all software for the TAB agency to use in completing TAB procedures.
- F. Provide CxA with full access to Building Automation System (BAS) during commissioning process. Provide control technician responsible for system programming during construction, to assist the CxA for the duration of the commissioning process.

1.07 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction system verification checklists and commissioning process functional test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for following HVAC systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components:
 - 1. Heating and cooling terminal and unitary equipment, including the following:

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC (continued):

- a. .
 - b. Electric heating.
 - c. Unitary heating and cooling equipment.
2. Controls and instrumentation.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

- A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.
- B. Return draft construction checklist review comments within **10** days of receipt.
- C. When review comments have been resolved, the CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
- D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

3.03 Cx TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals.
- B. Certify that HVAC instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that TAB procedures have been completed and that TAB reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.04 Cx TEST CONDITIONS

- A. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- B. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC system, document the deficiency and report it to Architect. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- C. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

SECTION 230800 - COMMISSIONING OF HVAC (continued):

3.05 Cx TESTS COMMON TO HVAC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions, to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- B. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- C. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of, CxA.
- D. Comply with construction checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Division 23 Sections specifying HVAC systems and equipment.
- E. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to perform and document the following:
 - 1. Construction checklist verification tests.
 - 2. Construction checklist verification test demonstrations.
 - 3. Cx tests.
 - 4. Cx test demonstrations.

END OF SECTION 230800

SECTION 232113.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Plastic pipe and fittings.
3. Piping joining materials.
4. Dielectric fittings.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Pipe and tube.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.

2.02 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
1. Source Limitations: Obtain PVC plastic pipe from single manufacturer.
 2. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2466 for Schedule 40 and ASTM D2467 for Schedule 80.
 3. PVC Schedule 80 Threaded Fittings: ASTM D2464.

2.03 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- B. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- C. Solvent Cements for PVC Piping: ASTM D2564. Include primer in accordance with ASTM F656.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
 2. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.

SECTION 232113.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

3. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Condensate-Drain Piping Installed Aboveground to Be Any of the Following:
 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
 2. Schedule 40, PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- M. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- N. Install valves according to the following:
 1. Section 23 05 23.12 "Ball Valves for Hydronic Piping."

SECTION 232113.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

- O. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- P. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B32.
- D. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D1785 schedule number, PVC pipe, and PVC socket fittings in accordance with ASTM D2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings in accordance with ASTM D2855.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install hangers for copper tubing , with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for plastic piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

SECTION 232113.11 - CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING (continued):

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

END OF SECTION 232113.11

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
 - 3. Refrigerants.

1.03 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.05 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L or ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

2.03 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig.**

B. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: **40 deg F.**
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: **700 psig.**

C. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig.**
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F.**

D. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: **NPS 1/4** connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig.**
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F.**

2.04 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-134a

- A. Suction Lines **NPS 4** and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type **L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type **L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type **L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.02 PIPING APPLICATIONS SCHEDULES

- A. Suction, Hot-Gas, and Liquid Tubing Applications, NPS 4 (DN 100) and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR or Type **L**, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.03 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- B. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- C. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- D. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- E. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- F. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- G. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.05 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

3.06 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

1. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.08 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to **500 micrometers**. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to **2 psig**.
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.09 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING (continued):

- 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- D. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes duct services for supply, return, outdoor air, and general exhaust (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2):
 - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 2. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Sheet metal materials.
 - 4. Duct liner.
 - 5. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 6. Hangers and supports.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
 - 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
 - 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
 - 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
 - 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- F. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.02 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, comply with requirements per "Ductwork Exposed to Weather" Article.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. For ducts with longest side less than **36 inches (914 mm)**, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
 - 2. For ducts with longest side **36 inches (914 mm)** or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams shall be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise specified for specific application.
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.03 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, comply with requirements per "Ductwork Exposed to Weather" Article.
 - 3. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **SEMCO, LLC;** SEMCO Single-Wall Round Duct & Fittings or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Crown Products Company, Inc.**
 - b. **McGill AirFlow LLC.**
 - c. **Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.**
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 (1524) Inches (mm) in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.04 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.05 DUCT LINER

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 2. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- a. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, **0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-)** diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from **0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-)** thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of **2500 fpm (12.7 m/s)** or greater.
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners **4 inches (100 mm)** from corners and at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)** transversely; at **3 inches (75 mm)** from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding **18 inches (450 mm)** longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than **2500 fpm (12.7 m/s)** or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: **3/32-inch (2.4-mm)** diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.06 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
9. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.07 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," **Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M)**, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
- E. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- F. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- G. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of **1 inch (25 mm)**, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
- J. Install fire, combination fire/smoke, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation.
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
 - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
 - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches (300 mm) and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches (350 mm) and larger.
- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.03 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3.04 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within **24 inches (610 mm)** of each elbow and within **48 inches (1220 mm)** of each branch intersection.

- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of **16 feet (5 m)**.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.06 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. The allowable duct leakage for each test section shall be based on a percentage of the total design airflow for that section. An additional allowance shall be included for leakage associated with manual balancing dampers.
 - 2. The total allowable leakage shall be calculated as follows:
 - a. Allowable Leakage (CFM) = (X% × Total Design Airflow) + (5 CFM × Number of Manual Balancing Dampers)
 - b. Where:
 - 1) X% represents the allowable percentage of design airflow.
 - 2) Total Design Airflow is the sum of design airflows for all outlets served by the test section
 - 3. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 4. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class of **3-Inch wg (750 Pa) or Greater**: Test representative duct sections, selected by Engineer from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 5. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

6. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, branch connections, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
7. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
8. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
9. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Submit complete leakage test reports for review, including design airflow, test pressure, number of dampers, measured leakage, and pass/fail result.

3.08 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.09 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
- 2.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **2-inch wg**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (2% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **3-inch wg (750 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
- C. Return Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (2% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (2% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative **2-inch wg (500 Pa)**.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (2% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A
 - c. Maximum Allowable Leakage: (1% of Total Design Airflow) + (5 cfm per Manual Balancing Damper).
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
 2. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
- G. Liner:
1. Supply-Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es) (25 mm) thick.
 2. Return-Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es) (25 mm) thick.
 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es) (25 mm) thick.
 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es) (25 mm) thick.
 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Flexible elastomeric, 2 inches (51 mm) thick.
 6. Transfer Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch(es) (25 mm) thick.
- H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:
1. Supply-Air Ducts: 2 inch(es) (51 mm) thick.
 2. Return-Air Ducts: 2 inch(es) (51 mm) thick.
 3. Exhaust-Air Ducts: 2 inch(es) (51 mm) thick.
- I. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - 1) Mitered elbows are not permitted in Noise Critical Spaces.
 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

SECTION 233113.11 - METAL DUCTS FOR GENERAL HVAC (continued):

- a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
- b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
- c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

J. Branch Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: 45-degree entry.
- 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: Conical tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113.11

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
 - 2. Manual volume dampers.
 - 3. Control dampers.
 - 4. Flange connectors.
 - 5. Turning vanes.
 - 6. Duct access panel assemblies.
 - 7. Flexible connectors.
 - 8. Duct accessory hardware.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

2.02 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company; CBD4 or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced with adjustable counterweights.
- C. Performance:
1. Maximum Air Velocity: **2000 fpm**.
 2. Maximum System Pressure: **3 inches wg**.
 3. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.
- D. Construction:
1. Frame:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. **0.093-inch**-thick extruded aluminum, with welded or mechanically attached corners.
 2. Blades:
 - a. Multiple single-piece blades.
 - b. End pivoted, maximum **6-inch** width, **0.050-inch**-thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
 3. Blade Action: Parallel.
- E. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.
- F. Blade Axles:
1. Material: Nonmetallic.
 2. Diameter: **0.50 inch**.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- I. Bearings: Steel ball.
- J. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure between **0.01-inch wg** and **0.05-inch wg**.
 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 3. 90-degree stops.

2.03 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin Company; MD35 (rectangular) and MDRS25 (round) or a comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

- a. [Greenheck Fan Corporation.](#)
- b. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
2. Performance:
 - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
3. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
4. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, 16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Molded synthetic.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
9. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

2.04 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Ruskin Company](#); CD60 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 1. [Greenheck Fan Corporation.](#)
 2. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
- B. **General Requirements:**
 1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed-blade configuration.
 2. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
- C. **Performance:**
 1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.
 2. Leakage:

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

- a. Class IA: Leakage shall not exceed 3 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
 4. Velocity: Up to 3000 fpm.
 5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
 6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
- D. Construction:
1. Linkage out of airstream.
 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
 - b. 16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - c. Mitered and welded corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
 - b. Opposed-blade design.
 - c. Galvanized steel.
 - d. 14-gauge-thick air foil dual skin.
 5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. Replaceable Closed-cell neoprene.
 - b. Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
 6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
 7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch diameter; galvanized steel.
 8. Blade-Linkage Hardware: Zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of air stream.
 9. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
- E. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 25 09 23.12 "Control Damper Accessories."

2.05 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.06 TURNING VANES

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- C. Vane Construction:
 - 1. Single wall for ducts up to **48 inches** wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.07 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Access panels used in cooking applications:
 - 1. Labeled compliant to NFPA 96 for grease duct access doors.
 - 2. Labeled in accordance with UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness **16-gauge** stainless steel.
- C. Fasteners: Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96, grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum **2000 deg F**.
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: **10 inches wg** positive or negative.

2.08 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip **5-3/4 inches** wide attached to two strips of **2-3/4-inch**-wide, **0.028-inch**-thick, galvanized sheet steel or **0.032-inch**-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: **26 oz./sq. yd.**
 - 2. Tensile Strength: **480 lbf/inch** in the warp and [**360 lbf/inch**] in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: **Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F**.
- G. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

H. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.

1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch in the warp and 185 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

I. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.

1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch in the warp and 340 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F.

2.09 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

2.10 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2D finish for concealed ducts and No. 2B finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 COORDINATION OF WORK WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Smoke Dampers and Combination Fire and Smoke Dampers:

1. Damper furnished and installed by Division 23.
2. Damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 23.
3. Electrical power for damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 26.
4. Smoke detector furnished by Division 29.

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

5. Smoke detector installed in ductwork by Division 23.
6. Control and/or signal wiring for smoke detector and damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 29.

B. Control Dampers:

1. Damper furnished and installed by Division 23.
2. Damper actuator furnished and installed by Division 25.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.
- E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- F. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- H. Install fire and smoke dampers in accordance with UL listing.
- I. Connect ducts to duct silencers rigidly.
- J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 4. At drain pans and seals.
 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 7. At each change in direction and at maximum **50-ft.** spacing.
 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 10. For grease ducts, install at locations and spacing as required by NFPA 96.
 11. Control devices requiring inspection.
 12. Elsewhere as indicated.
 13. Downstream of air terminal units with reheat coils.

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES (continued):

- K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- L. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- M. Label access doors according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- O. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.03 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR SCHEDULE

- A. Indoor equipment, non-corrosive environment with airstream not in excess of 200 deg F: Indoor system, flexible connector fabric.
- B. Outdoor equipment, non-corrosive environment with airstream not in excess of 200 deg F: Outdoor system, flexible connector fabric.
- C. Indoor and outdoor equipment with airstream in excess of 200 deg F: High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors. Systems to include but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Smoke exhaust fans.
 - 2. Kitchen grease and heat removal hood exhaust fans.
- D. Indoor and outdoor equipment, corrosive environment: High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors. Systems to include but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Laboratory exhaust fans.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
 - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
 - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 2333

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.
 - 2. Flexible duct elbow supports.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

2.02 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc; 1M.
 - 2. JP Lamborn Co.; AMR.
 - 3. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company; M-KE.
 - 4. Atco; UPC 036.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film or polyethylene fabric supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: **10-inch wg (2500 Pa)** positive and **1.0-inch wg (250 Pa)** negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: **4000 fpm (20 m/s)**.
 - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C)**.
 - 4. Insulation R-Value: R6.

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS (continued):

2.03 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes **3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm)**, to suit duct size.

2.04 FLEXIBLE DUCT ELBOW SUPPORTS

- A. **Products:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1. **Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc;** FlexRight.
 - 2. **Malco;** FDS1.
 - 3. **Titus;** FlexRight.
 - 4. **Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company;** FlexFlow.
- B. 90-degree Elbow: UL 2043, universal-mount, one-piece, fully adjustable, radius-forming brace to support **4-inch (102-mm)** through **16-inch (406-mm)** diameter flexible air ducts; copolymer polypropylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum **24-inch (600-mm)** lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum **60-inch (1500-mm)** lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- F. Installation:
 - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
 - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
 - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
 - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
 - 6. Install flexible duct elbow supports in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - 7. Install flexible duct elbow supports over outer jacket of flexible ducts to form smooth, 90-degree bends to eliminate flexible duct kinks and airflow restrictions. Secure flexible duct to flexible duct elbow support with nylon cable ties.
 - 8. Install flexible duct elbow supports at 90-degree bends at the following locations:
 - a. Diffusers, registers, and grilles.
 - b. Duct take-offs and taps.
 - c. Air devices with round inlets and outlets.
 - d. Flexible ducts being used as elbows.
- G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS (continued):

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches (1200 mm) apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch (13 mm) per 12 inches (300 mm).
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches (1800 mm) o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 233416.11 - SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Square in-line centrifugal fans.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in normal operation, emergency operation, and maintenance manuals with replacement parts listing.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

SECTION 233416.11 - SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS (continued):

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Carnes Company.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. PennBarry.
- B. Description: Square in-line centrifugal fans.
- C. Housing:
 - 1. Housing Material: Reinforced galvanized steel.
 - 2. Housing Coating: None.
 - 3. Housing Construction: Side panels shall be easily removable for service. Include inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- D. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- E. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosures around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- F. Fan Wheels: Aluminum airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- G. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Access for Inspection, Cleaning, and Maintenance: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 - 4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 - 5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
 - 6. Side Discharge: Flange connector and attachment hardware to provide right-angle discharge on side of unit.
 - 7. Insulated Housing: Fiberglass duct liner for the interior of unit to provide a reduction in noise.

2.02 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- B. Where variable-frequency drives are indicated or scheduled, provide fan motor compatible with variable-frequency drive.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

SECTION 233416.11 - SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS (continued):

- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311 and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify fans according to AMCA 99.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Support duct-mounted and other hanging centrifugal fans directly from the building structure, using suitable hanging systems as specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.02 DUCTWORK AND PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.

3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26.

SECTION 233416.11 - SQUARE IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS (continued):

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 26.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
 - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 6. Adjust belt tension.
 - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct-work systems are in fully open position.
 - 10. See Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing For HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233416.11

SECTION 233423.12 - CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 8. Fan speed controllers.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Carnes Company.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.
- D. Back-draft damper: Integral.

SECTION 233423.12 - CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS (continued):

- E. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.
- F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless steel springs, and fusible link.
 - 3. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.

2.02 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal. Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps with elastomeric hangers. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC".
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

SECTION 233423.12 - CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS (continued):

3.02 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26.

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 25.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
 - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 6. Adjust belt tension.
 - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

SECTION 233423.12 - CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS (continued):

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- C. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- D. Lubricate bearings.

3.07 **DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal ventilators - roof upblast.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
 - 9. Fan speed controllers.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 1. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.02 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF UPBLAST

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS (continued):

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Carnes Company.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Loren Cook Company.
 4. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
 2. Grease-Laden Air Exhaust Applications: Provide grease collector.]
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings; minimum ABMA9, L(10) of 100,000 hours.
 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
 5. Spark-resistant, all-aluminum wheel construction.
 6. Restaurant Kitchen Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air exhaust.
 7. Smoke Control Exhaust: UL listed for smoke control systems.
 8. Extended Lubrication Lines.
- F. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 24 inches (600 mm).
 3. Sound Curb: Curb with sound-absorbing insulation.
 4. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.
 5. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 6. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
- G. Prefabricated Kitchen Exhaust Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; ventilation openings on all sides to ventilate curb interstitial space. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS (continued):

1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange manufactured to accommodate roof slope.
2. Overall Height: **24 inches (600 mm)**.
3. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.
4. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
5. Vented Curb: For kitchen exhaust; **24 inches (600 mm)** high galvanized steel; unlined, with lou-
vered vents in vertical sides.
6. NFPA 96 code requirements for commercial cooking operations.
7. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: UL 762 listed for grease-laden air.

2.03 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for mo-
tors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not re-
quire motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.04 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an
NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 311, and label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
Sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301. The fans shall be tested according to AMCA 300.
- D. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal.
The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density,
speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- E. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- F. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant
kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Division 07 for installation of roof
curbs.
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and
Equipment."

3.02 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS (continued):

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26.

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 25.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
 - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 6. Adjust belt tension.
 - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct-work systems are in fully open position.
 - 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS (continued):

- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

3.07 **DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423.13

SECTION 233423.13 - CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes high-volume, low-speed fans.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. HVLS - High volume, low speed.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
 - 2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 6. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Show dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each HVLS fan.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation required to select mounting components and seismic restraints.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVLS fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS (continued):

- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of fans that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Motor, Including Controls: Seven year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts, Including Blades and Hub: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled to UL 507.
- C. CSA Compliance: Listed and labeled to CSA C22.2, No. 113.
- D. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for HVLS fans.
- E. AMCA Compliance:
 - 1. Test HVLS fans according to AMCA 230.
 - 2. Certify HVLS fan performance according to AMCA 211.
- F. Performance Data: Comply with ANSI 230 test procedure standard, based on five rating points: 20-, 40-, 60-, 80-, and 100-percent of maximum speed. Comply with AMCA 211 for publication of performance data.

2.02 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Big Ass Fans.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS (continued):

3. [Kelley: An Entrematic brand.](#)

B. Source Limitations: Obtain HVLS fans from single source from single manufacturer.

2.03 HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested horizontal, non-ducted fan unit, consisting of large-diameter blade set, direct-drive electric motor, with speed-reducing gearbox.

1. Provide fan designed to circulate large air volume, vertically, at low velocity.
2. Maximum Operating Temperature: 122 (50) deg F (deg C).
3. Frame:

a. Material: Galvanized steel.

1) Finish: Powdercoat.

4. Diameter: As indicated on Plans.
5. Blades: Airfoil type.

a. Material: Aluminum.

1) Blade Finish: Anodized.

6. Motor: Squirrel cage, integral to fan frame totally enclosed fan cooled.
7. Wiring and Controls Enclosure:

- a. NEMA 250, Class 4X.
- b. Material: Galvanized steel.

1) Enclosure Finish: Powdercoat.

c. Grounded.

8. Controls: Provide wall-mounted keypad.

- a. Provide variable speed motor controller.
- b. Provide fan start/stop, speed, and direction control.
- c. Provide relay for integration with fire alarm control panel.

9. Maximum Sound Power Level: 55 dBA.
10. Standard Mounting Bracket: Steel beam/steel angle.
11. Mounting Bracket: See structural plans..
12. Accessories:

- a. Mounting extension tube.
- b. Guy wires.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting HVLS fan performance, maintenance, and operations.

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS (continued):

1. Fan locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for mounting, control, and electrical connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for mounting location, anchor-bolt sizes, and locations, to verify actual locations for mounting connections before installation of fan.
- C. Examine areas for suitable conditions where fan will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF HIGH-VOLUME LOW-SPEED FANS

- A. Install fan according to manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with NFPA 13 for installation of HVLS fans and maximum allowable fan diameter. Center HVLS fans between four adjacent sprinklers. Minimum vertical clearance from HVLS fan to sprinkler deflector is 3 feet (0.9 m).
- D. Comply with NFPA 72 and interlock HVLS fans to shut down upon receiving an alarm from fire alarm system.
- E. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Anchor fan to building structure with manufacturer's recommended mounting bracket for installed condition.
 2. Consult a licensed professional structural engineer for mounting methods and approval for mounting to the structure. Structure must be able to withstand the torque and forces generated by the fan.
 3. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 4. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- F. Install unit to permit access for maintenance.
- G. Install parts and accessories shipped loose.

3.03 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26.
 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS (continued):

- E. Install power wiring to field-mounted electrical devices, furnished by fan manufacturer, but not factory mounted.

3.04 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect control wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Division 26.
- C. Connect control interlock wiring between HVLS fan and other equipment to provide a complete and functioning system.
- D. Connect control wiring between fan unit control interface and control system to provide remote control and monitoring.
- E. Install control devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted.
- F. Install control wiring to field-mounted control devices, furnished by fan manufacturer, but not factory mounted.
- G. Protect installed units from damage caused by other work.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Fan or components will be considered defective if fan or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare and submit test and inspection reports.

3.06 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that fan is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers and switches.
 - 3. Verify proper motor rotation direction and free fan rotation.
 - 4. Check bearing and gearbox lubrication.
 - 5. Verify proper fan rotation. Set rotation selector to blow vertically downward during heating season, and vertically upward during cooling season.

3.07 CLEANING

SECTION 233439 - HIGH-VOLUME, LOW-SPEED FANS (continued):

- A. Clean equipment externally; remove coatings applied for protection during shipping and storage, foreign material, and oily residue according to manufacturer's written instructions. Following manufacturer's cleaning procedures, and clean with manufacturer-recommended cleaning products.

3.08 **DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVLS fans.
- B. Video training sessions, and provide electronic copy of video to Owner.

END OF SECTION 233439

SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
 - 2. Fixed face registers and grilles.
 - 3. Linear bar grilles.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 REGISTERS

- A. Adjustable Blade Face Register:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Price Industries**; 620 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Carnes Company.**
 - b. **METALAIRE, Inc.**
 - c. **Nailor Industries Inc.**
 - d. **Titus.**
 - e. **Tuttle & Bailey.**
 - 2. Material: Aluminum.
 - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 - 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 - 5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 - 6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 - 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 - 8. Damper Type: Adjustable, aluminum, opposed blade.
- B. Fixed Face Register:
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Price Industries**; 630 (no filter) and 630FF (with filter) or a comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES (continued):

- a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRe, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 5. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 6. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 7. Damper Type: Adjustable, aluminum, opposed blade.
- C. Spiral Duct Adjustable Face Register:
1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Price Industries](#); SDG or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRe, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 8. Damper Type: Adjustable, aluminum, opposed blade.
 9. Accessories: Air extractor.

2.02 GRILLES

- A. Adjustable Blade Face Grille:
1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Price Industries](#); 620 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRe, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
- B. Fixed Face Grille:
1. [Basis-of-Design Product:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Price Industries](#); 630 (no filter) and 630FF (with filter) or a comparable product by one of the following:

SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES (continued):

- a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRE, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 5. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 6. Mounting: Countersunk screw or Lay in, as required by ceiling type.
- C. Linear Bar Grilles
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Price Industries](#); LBP or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRE, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey.](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced **1/2 inch (13 mm)** apart.
 5. Core Construction: Removable.
 6. Distribution plenum.
 - a. Internal insulation.
 - b. Inlet damper.
 7. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.
- D. Spiral Duct Adjustable Face Grille:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide [Price Industries](#); SDG or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. [Carnes Company.](#)
 - b. [METALAIRE, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Nailor Industries Inc.](#)
 - d. [Titus.](#)
 - e. [Tuttle & Bailey](#)
 2. Material: Aluminum.
 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 5. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced **3/4 inch (19 mm)** apart.
 6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
 7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
 8. Accessories: Air extractor.
- E. Heavy Duty Fixed Face Grille:

SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES (continued):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Price Industries; 97 or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Carnes Company.
 - b. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Titus.
 - e. Tuttle & Bailey
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced **1/2 inch (13 mm)** apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral, reinforced with vertical support bars.
6. Frame: **1 inch (25 mm)** wide.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
8. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hooded ventilators.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 - 1. Wind Loads, Indicated on Drawings: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.

2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS (continued):

2.03 HOODED VENTILATORS

- A. Description: Hooded penthouse for intake or relief air.
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Loren Cook Company; GI/GR (rectangular) and PR (round) or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. **Carnes.**
 - 2. **Greenheck Fan Corporation.**
 - 3. **PennBarry.**
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain hooded ventilators from single manufacturer.
- D. Construction:
 - 1. Material: Aluminum, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than **0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-)** thick base and **0.050-inch- (1.27-mm-)** thick hood; suitably reinforced.
 - 2. Insulation: None.
 - 3. Bird Screening: Aluminum, **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)** square mesh or flattened, expanded aluminum, **3/4-inch (19-mm)** diamond mesh wire.
- E. Dampers:
 - 1. Location: Curb damper tray.
 - 2. Control: As indicated on Plans.
 - 3. Tray: Provide damper tray or shelf with opening **3 (76) inches (mm)** less than interior curb dimensions indicated.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; **1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-)** thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and **1-1/2-inch (40-mm)** wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
 - 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: **24 inches (600 mm).**

2.04 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
 - 1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 / E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187 / D 1187M.

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS (continued):

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Secure gravity ventilators to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Refer to Division 07 "Roof Accessories."
- C. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Division 07.
- F. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- G. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.
- H. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes, so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- I. Refer to Division 07 for flashing and counterflashing of roof curbs.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 233113.11 "Metal Ducts for General HVAC" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 233723

SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.
 - 2. FEMA approved stationary blade louvers.
 - 3. Blank-off panels for louvers

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are vertical).
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- E. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 550.
- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified windborne-debris-impact resistance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 540.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
 - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
 - 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed in accordance with AMCA 550 and AMCA 540 by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel, powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 1. Wind Loads:
 - a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Louvers located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade pass enhanced protection, when tested in accordance with AMCA 540.
- C. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width in accordance with AMCA 550 and AMCA 540.
- D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

2.03 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

- A. Horizontal Front Blades with Vertical Rear Blades, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant, Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Ruskin:** HZ700MD or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Greenheck Fan Corporation:** EHV-550D.
 - b. **Pottorff:** EDV-545
 2. Louver Depth: **5.375 inches (136 mm)**.
 3. Frame Nominal Thickness: **0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Front Blade: Horizontal, drainable blade style not less than **0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**.
 - b. Rear Blade: Vertical, wind-driven-rain-resistant style not less than **0.050 inch (1 mm)**.
 5. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: Not less than **8.0 sq.ft (0.74 sq. m)** for **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** wide by **48-inch- (1220-mm-)** high louver.
 - b. Air Performance: Not more than **0.20-inch wg (40-Pa)** static pressure drop at **700-fpm (3.6-m/s)** free-area exhaust velocity.
 - c. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99 percent effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall rate of **8 inches (200 mm)** per hour and a wind speed of **50 mph (22.4 m/s)** at a core-area intake velocity of **803 fpm (4.0 m/s)**.
 6. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
 7. AMCA Rating: AMCA 540, AMCA 550.

2.04 FIXED ACOUSTICAL LOUVERS

- A. Acoustic Performance: Provide acoustical louvers complying with ratings specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those specified, except for length and width for airborne sound-transmission loss in accordance with ASTM E90.
- B. Fixed, Acoustical Louver, Formed Metal: Louver with formed-metal blades filled on interior with mineral-fiber, rigid-board, acoustical insulation retained by perforated metal sheet of same material and finish as blade.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin; ACL845AF or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **Greenheck Fan Corporation.**
 - b. **Pottorff.**
 2. Louver Depth: **8 inches (200 mm)**.
 3. Frame Material:
 - a. Extruded aluminum or aluminum sheet, not less than **0.080-inch (2.03-mm)** nominal thickness.
 4. Blade Material:
 - a. Aluminum sheet, not less than **0.080-inch (2.03-mm)** nominal thickness.
 5. Blade Shape: Airfoil.

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

6. Blade Angle: 45 degrees unless otherwise indicated.
7. Blade Spacing:
 - a. 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. for 8-inch- (200-mm-) deep louvers.
8. Free Area: Not less than 4 sq. ft. (0.37 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.

2.05 FEMA APPROVED STATIONARY BLADE LOUVERS

- A. Horizontal, Chevron-Blade, Sight-Proof, FEMA 361 Louver:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin; XP500 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
 - b. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - d. Pottorff.
 2. Louver Depth: 5 inches (125 mm).
 3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm).
 4. Material: Aluminum.
 5. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: 53 percent, nominal.
 - b. Air Performance: Not more than 0.25-inch wg static pressure drop at 900-fpm (4.6-m/s) free-area intake velocity.
 6. Design Windload:
 - a. 300-psf: On units up to 78 inches (1981 mm) wide.
 - b. 250-psf: On units up to 90 inches (2286 mm) wide.
 - c. 200-psf: On units up to 96 inches (2438 mm) wide.
 7. Louver shall comply with FEMA 361 Design and Construction for Community Shelters, Zone IV Criteria, 250 MPH wind, 15-lb, 2x4 impact at 100 mph.

2.06 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm) from each corner and at 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
 1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
 3. Type: Non-rewirable, U-shaped frames.

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** square mesh, **0.063-inch (1.60-mm)** wire.

2.07 BLANK-OFF PANELS

A. Insulated Blank-Off Panels: Laminated panels consisting of an insulating core surfaced on back and front with metal sheets and attached to back of louver.

1. Thickness: **2 inches (50 mm)**.
2. Metal Facing Sheets, Aluminum: Not less than **0.032-inch (0.81-mm)** nominal thickness.
3. Insulating Core: Extruded-polystyrene foam.
4. Edge Treatment: Trim perimeter edges of blank-off panels with louver manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum-channel frames, not less than **0.080-inch (2.03-mm)** nominal thickness, with corners mitered and with same finish as panels.
5. Seal perimeter joints between panel faces and louver frames with gaskets or sealant.
6. Panel Finish: Same type of finish applied to louvers, but black color.
7. Attach blank-off panels with sheet metal screws.

2.08 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221 (ASTM B221M), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.**

B. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.**

C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.

1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized-steel or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
4. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.

D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.09 FABRICATION

A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.

1. Continuous Vertical Assemblies: Fabricate units without interrupting blade-spacing pattern unless horizontal mullions are indicated.

C. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

- D. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
 - 1. Frame Type: Exterior flange unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- F. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches (1830 mm) o.c., whichever is less.
 - 1. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.
- G. Provide extended sills for recessed louvers.
- H. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
 - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
 - 2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 233919

SECTION 233919 - FIXED LOUVERS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pleated panel filters.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. HIPS: High-impact polystyrene.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Provide one complete set(s) of filters for each filter bank. If system includes prefilters, provide only prefilters.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean, dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION (continued):

- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 3. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality"; Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
 - 2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.
- B. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- C. Comply with UL 900.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS - STANDARD

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
 - 1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Camfil**; AP-Thirteen or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **AAF / Flanders.**
 - b. **Airguard.**
 - c. **Purafil, Inc.**
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Depth: **1 inch (25 mm)**, **2 inches (50 mm)**, or **4 inches (100 mm)** nominal, as indicated in Equipment Schedules.
 - 2. Maximum or Rated Face Velocity: **625 fpm (3.2 m/s)**.
 - 3. Initial Resistance: **0.25-inch wg (62 Pa)** at **350 fpm (1.8 m/s)**.
 - 4. Recommended Final Resistance: **1.0 inches wg (249 Pa)**.
 - 5. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13, with "Composite Average Particle Size Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- D. Media: Interlaced glass or synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.

SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION (continued):

1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
 2. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
 3. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
 4. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.
- E. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer sealed or bonded to the media.
- 2.03 **PLEATED PANEL FILTERS – MOISTURE RESISTANT**
- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
1. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Camfil**; Opti-Pac Durable or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. **AAF / Flanders**; PrecisionCell III.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. Depth: **2 inches (50 mm)** or **4 inches (100 mm)** nominal, as indicated in Equipment Schedules.
 2. Maximum or Rated Face Velocity: **625 fpm (3.2 m/s)**.
 3. Initial Resistance: **0.25-inch wg (62 Pa)** at **350 fpm (1.8 m/s)**.
 4. Recommended Final Resistance: **1.5 inches wg (373 Pa)**.
 5. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13, with "Composite Average Particle Size Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.
- D. Media: Synthetic polypropylene fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
 2. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
- E. Filter-Media Frame: Plastic frame bonded to the entire periphery of media.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, air-handling units, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF FILTERS

- A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.
- B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.
- C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

SECTION 234100 - PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION (continued):

- D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

3.03 FILTER SCHEDULE

- A. Indoor equipment with outside airflow less than 100 percent of supply airflow:
 - 1. Pleated panel filters - standard.
- B. Indoor equipment with outside airflow equal to 100 percent of supply airflow:
 - 1. Pleated panel filters – moisture resistant.
- C. Outdoor equipment:
 - 1. Pleated panel filters – moisture resistant.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 234100

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
 - 1. Casings.
 - 2. Fans.
 - 3. Motors.
 - 4. Coils.
 - 5. Refrigerant circuit components.
 - 6. Air filtration.
 - 7. Dampers.
 - 8. Electrical power connections.
 - 9. Controls.
 - 10. Accessories.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital controls.
- B. ECM: Electronically commutated motor.
- C. MERV: Minimum efficiency reporting value.
- D. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the outdoor-air stream to reject heat during cooling operations and to absorb heat during heating operations. "Outdoor air" is defined as the air outside the building or taken from outdoors and not previously circulated through the system.
- E. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.
- F. base on ground.
- G. Supply-Air Fan: The fan providing supply air to conditioned space. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.
- H. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil: Refrigerant coil in the supply-air stream to absorb heat (provide cooling) during cooling operations and to reject heat (provide heating) during heating operations. "Supply air" is defined as the air entering a space from air-conditioning, heating, or ventilating apparatus.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS (continued):

1. Include manufacturer's technical data.
2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. AHRI Compliance:
 1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
 4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:
 1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
 2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
 3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS (continued):

- C. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
 - 2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
 - 3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Global Corporation.
 - 2. Daikin Applied.
 - 3. Trane.
 - 4. YORK; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.

2.03 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Exterior Casing Thickness: Minimum 0.0626 inch thick.
- B. Recirculating-Air Filters:
 - 1. Thickness: 2 inches Insert dimension.
 - 2. Filter Type: Glass fiber with minimum 80 percent arrestance, and MERV 8.

2.04 CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with 1-inch foam insulation and seal moisture tight for R-7 performance.
- C. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
- D. Inner Casing Fabrication Requirements:
 - 1. Inside Casing: G-90-coated galvanized steel, Minimum 0.034 inch thick.

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS (continued):

- E. Condensate Drain Pans: Fabricated using stainless-steel sheet 0.025 inch thick, a minimum of 2 inches deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1 for design and construction of drain pans.
 - 1. Double-Wall Construction: Fill space between walls with foam insulation and seal moisture tight.
 - 2. Drain Connections: Threaded nipple.
- F. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.05 FANS

- A. Supply-Air Fans: Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and galvanized- or painted-steel fan scrolls.
 - 1. Direct-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Motor shall be resiliently mounted in the fan inlet.

2.06 MOTORS

- A. Comply with Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment" and the requirements of this Article.
- B. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- C. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

2.07 COILS

- A. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
 - 1. Aluminum-plate fin and seamless internally finned copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
 - 2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coils from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
 - 3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
- B. Electric-Resistance Heating:
 - 1. Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium, supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame. Terminate elements in stainless-steel machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.
 - 2. Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically reset, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box.
 - 3. Overcurrent Protection: Manual-reset thermal cutouts, factory wired in each heater stage.
 - 4. Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection. Include the following controls:
 - a. Magnetic contactors.
 - b. Step Controller: Pilot lights and override toggle switch for each step.
 - c. SCR Controller: Pilot lights operate on load ratio, a minimum of five steps.
 - d. Time-delay relay.
 - e. Airflow proving switch.

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS (continued):

2.08 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, variable-speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
 - 1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
 - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
 - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
 - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
 - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
 - 6. Minimum off-time relay.
 - 7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
 - 8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

2.09 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Minimum arrestance and MERV 13 according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.10 DAMPERS

- A. Leakage Rate: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.

2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.12 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls:
 - 1. Control-voltage transformer.
 - 2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
 - a. Heat-cool-off switch.
 - b. Fan on-auto switch.
 - c. Automatic changeover.
 - d. Adjustable deadband.
 - e. Exposed set point.
 - f. Exposed indication.
 - g. Degree F indication.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

- A. Safeties:
 - 1. Condensate overflow switch.

SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS (continued):

2. Phase-loss reversal protection.
 3. High and low pressure control.
 4. Electric coil airflow-proving switch.
- B. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
- C. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.
- D. Oil separator.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Provide a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes small capacity, air-cooled, split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units (5 tons and smaller) consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
(continued):

1.07 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 - 2. Daikin Industries, Ltd.
 - 3. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.02 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

- A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:
 - 1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
 - 2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - 3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 - 4. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
 - 5. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
 - 6. Fan Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
 - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
(continued):

7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
8. Air Filtration Section:
 - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
 - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
 - 2) Comply with Section 23 41 00 "Particulate Air Filtration" for filters.
 - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation. Filters shall be removable from one side.
 - b. Extended-Surface, Disposable Panel Filters:
 - 1) Factory-fabricated, dry, extended-surface type.
 - 2) Thickness: **1 inch**.
 - 3) Mounting Frames: Welded, galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.
9. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Fabricated with two percent slope to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 2) Depth: A minimum of **1 inches** deep.
 - b. Single-wall, galvanized-steel sheet or rust-resistant, polycarbonate.
 - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - 1) Minimum Connection Size: **NPS 3/4**.
 - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

2.03 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS**)**

- A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
 1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
 2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Single-stage or two-stage compressor motor (as indicated on Drawings) with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 - c. Refrigerant: R-410A.
 - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid sub-cooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
 3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
 4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
(continued):

5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Thermostat/Humidistat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan. 7-day programmable combination thermostat/humidistat.
 1. Compressor time delay.
 2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
 3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, humidity, set-point temperature, set-point humidity, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on a support stand equal to DryStand Rooftop Supports and Platforms.
 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 23 31 13.11 "Metal Ducts for General HVAC." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
(continued):

- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.04 **STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 **DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 238126.11

SECTION 238126.11 - AIR-COOLED, SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS (5 TONS AND SMALLER)
(continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, factory-assembled and -tested, refrigerant-type, indoor, mechanical dehumidification units designed for indoor installation.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of indoor, mechanical dehumidification unit.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each indoor, mechanical dehumidification unit.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of dehumidification units.
 - 4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 - 5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for indoor, mechanical dehumidification units, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each indoor, mechanical dehumidification unit, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dehumidification units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set(s) of each type of filter specified.
 - 2. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-drive fan.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1.08 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, mechanical dehumidification units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Refrigerant Coils: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNIT MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Section 5, "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7, "Construction and System Start-up."
- D. ASHRAE 15 Compliance: "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

2.03 CASINGS

- A. Casing: Double-wall construction with interior corrosion-resistant coating and exterior baked-enamel steel or aluminum, stainless-steel fasteners, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, condensate drain connection, and lifting lugs.
 - 1. Access: Hinged access doors with neoprene compression gaskets and cam latches.
 - 2. Insulation: Minimum **2-inch- (50-mm-)** thick, glass-fiber-insulation fill or closed cell foam, with thermal breaks.
 - 3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Drain Pan and Connection: Stainless steel; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.

2.04 FANS

- A. Supply Fans:
 - 1. Blades: Forward curved.
 - 2. Type: Unhoused plenum type, centrifugal.
 - 3. Blade and Housing Material: Galvanized steel with baked-enamel finish.
 - 4. Drive: Direct-driven with keyed motor shaft.
- B. Fan Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.05 FILTERS

- A. Pleated:
 - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard depth.
 - 2. MERV Rating: MERV 6, according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.06 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM

- A. Energy Efficiency: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Refrigerant Coils with Multiple Refrigerant Circuits:
 - 1. Tubes: Copper.
 - 2. Fins:
 - a. Material: Aluminum.
 - b. Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per **inch (mm)**.
 - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
 - 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
 - 5. Frames: Galvanized-steel frame.
 - 6. Coatings: Corrosion-resistant coating.
 - 7. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
 - 8. Source Quality Control: Factory test to minimum **450-psig (3105-kPa)** internal pressure and to minimum **300-psig (2070-kPa)** internal pressure while underwater.

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

- C. Compressors: Hermetic, scroll compressors with integral vibration isolators and crankcase heaters that de-energize during compressor operation; with thermal-expansion valves, filter-dryers, sight glasses, compressor service valves, and liquid- and suction-line service valves.
 - 1. Minimum Number of Refrigerant Circuits: Two for compressor capacities of more than 7-1/2 tons (26.4 kW).
 - 2. Refrigerant: R-454B.
 - 3. Capacity Control:
 - a. Hot-gas bypass valve and piping on one compressor.
 - b. Cycle compressor.
 - 4. Low-Pressure Cutout: Manual reset after three automatic-reset failures.
 - 5. High-Pressure Cutout: Manual reset.
 - 6. Compressor Motor Overload Protection: Manual reset.
 - 7. Antirecycling Timing Device: Prevent compressor restart for five minutes after shutdown.
 - 8. Defrost Cycle: Adjustable timer shuts off supply fan. Compressor cycles until suction-line temperature confirms thawed evaporator coil.
 - 9. .
- D. Energy Recovery Heat Exchanger (Pool Heater): Cupronickel, coaxial, vented, double-wall construction for potable-water service.

2.07 CONTROLS

- A. Control Panel: Integral service compartment containing fan-motor thermal and overload cutouts, compressor thermal and overload cutouts, 115-V control transformer if required, magnetic contactors for fan and compressor motors, and a nonfused factory-mounted and -wired disconnect switch for single external electrical power connection.
- B. Operating Control: Space humidistat cycles the compressor. Humidistat shall incorporate fan on-off-auto switch.

2.08 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.
- E. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3,000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.
 - 1. Standards:
 - a. ASTM B 117 for salt spray.

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

- b. ASTM D 2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in/lb (11.3 N/m).
- c. ASTM B 3359 for cross hatch adhesion of 5B.
- 2. Application: Spray.
- 3. Thickness: 1 mil (0.025 mm).
- 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

2.09 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Factory test and rate dehumidification units according to AHRI 910.
- B. Sound-Power-Level Ratings: Factory test and rate dehumidification units according to AHRI 575.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where dehumidification units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install dehumidification units on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Where piping is installed adjacent to dehumidification units, allow space for service and maintenance of dehumidification units.
- B. Connect piping to dehumidification units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- C. Connect condensate drain pans using minimum NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan, and install cleanout at changes in direction.
- D. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Connect to supply and return coil tapings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

3.04 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
 - 3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.05 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between control devices.
- C. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- D. Connect smoke detector to fire alarm system.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Dehumidification unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Clean dehumidification units internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Clean fan interiors to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Vacuum clean fan wheels, cabinets, and coils' entering-air face.

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

- B. After completing system installation, testing, and startup service of dehumidification units, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

3.09 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Perform the following final checks before startup:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Perform cleaning and adjusting specified in this Section.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify free fan wheel rotation and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Check lubrication of bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts.
 - 6. Set outside- and return-air mixing dampers to minimum outside-air setting.
 - 7. Install clean filters.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.
- C. Starting procedures for dehumidification units include the following:
 - 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace malfunctioning motors, bearings, and fan wheels.
 - 2. Measure and record motor's electrical values for voltage and amperage.
 - 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing of dehumidification unit.
- E. Startup Report: Report findings during startup. Identify startup steps, corrective measures taken, and final results.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain dehumidification units.

END OF SECTION 238416.16

SECTION 238416.16 - INDOOR, MECHANICAL DEHUMIDIFICATION UNITS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 26 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for electrical systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms .

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
1. ASHRAE
 - a. Standard 90.1 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low Rise Residential Buildings - 2019
 2. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 3. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 - d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment – 2020
 - e. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - f. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2020
 4. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Accessibility Code
 5. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 6. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Electrical Systems
 - c. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - d. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 7. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 - 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 - 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 - 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 - 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 - 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 - 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 - 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 - 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 - 9. Electrical Modifications:

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

- a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the HVAC, plumbing, and fire-suppression systems at the time of design.
 - b. If HVAC, plumbing, or fire-suppression equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
 - c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.
- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- D. Submittal Review Fees:
1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS (NOT REQUIRED)

- A. Should the Contractor elect to provide Coordination Drawings when not expressly required by the Engineer, such Drawings shall be considered for informational purposes only. The Engineer will not conduct a review of these Drawings, and their submission or any implied approval shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to fully comply with the requirements set forth in the Construction Documents. The Contractor remains solely responsible for ensuring that all work meets the contract specifications and standards, regardless of the content or status of the Coordination Drawings.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
 - 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
 - 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 - 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 - 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 - 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

1.18 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
 - 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 - 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 - 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 - 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
 - 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 - 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.
- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.08 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 26. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
1. Metal conduit
 2. Plastic conduit
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

3.09 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests

SECTION 260100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRICAL (continued):

1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.
 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

END OF SECTION 260100

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire.
2. Aluminum building wire.
3. Connectors and splices.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

C. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.

D. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.

2.02 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Standards:

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES (continued):

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.
- D. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
- 2.03 **CONNECTORS AND SPLICES**
- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
1. Material: Copper or aluminum to match wire.
 2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.
 3. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
1. Aluminum for feeders No. 6 AWG and larger. Copper for all other feeders. Conductors must be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
1. Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.02 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
1. Critical Operations Power Systems (COPS) Branch Circuits as defined by NEC 708: COPS circuits leaving the Designated Critical Operations Area (DCOA) shall be UL listed (FHJR) 2-hour rated, type MI within rigid steel conduit (ERMC-S) raceways.

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES (continued):

- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inch (150 mm) of slack.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

3.06 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES (continued):

3.07 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors.
 - 3. Test conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with Critical operation power system (COPS) requirements.
 - 4. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500 V(dc) for 300 V rated cable and 1000 V(dc) for 600 V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Balanced twisted pair cable hardware.
 - 3. Control cable.
 - 4. Control-circuit conductors.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: **60 inch (1520 mm)** or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

2.02 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- C. Conductors: 100 ohm, No. 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- E. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- F. Jacket: Yellow thermoplastic.

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES (continued):

2.03 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables must be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100 ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.

2.04 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.05 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- D. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits that Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 - 1. Critical operations power system (COPS).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES (continued):

1. Outlet boxes for cables must be no smaller than 4 inch (102 mm) square by 2-1/8 inch (53 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 2. Flexible metal conduit must not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 3. Extend conduits 4 inch (75 mm) above finished floor.
 4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Terminate all conductors; cable must not contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 2. Cables may not be spliced and must be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 3. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 4. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inch (760 mm) and not more than 6 inch (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 6. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
 7. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
 8. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 9. Ground wire must be copper, and grounding methods must comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
1. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
1. Install wiring in raceways.
 2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
 3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES (continued):

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of **8 inch (200 mm)** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **48 inch (760 mm)** apart.
2. Cable must not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

3.03 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.04 FIRESTOPPING

- #### **A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.**

3.05 GROUNDING

- #### **A. For control-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."**

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- #### **A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."**

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- C. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.02 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.
- B. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:
 - 1. Not smaller than No. 6 AWG and not longer than **12 inches (300 mm)**. If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with two holes and long barrel for two crimps. If jumper is a flexi-

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

ble braid, it shall have a one-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.

C. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

D. PGB and TMGB Grounding Bus: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with TIA-607-B.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch (100-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

E. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with TIA-607-B.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.03 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Mechanical-Type Bus-Bar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- I. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- J. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- K. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on **5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm)** centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- L. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- M. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- N. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless steel bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.04 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; **3/4 inch by 10 ft. (19 mm by 3 m)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least **30 inch (750 mm)** below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury **12 inch (300 mm)** above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers **2 inch (50 mm)** minimum from wall, **6 inch (150 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
 - 3. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- E. Telecommunications Grounding:
 - 1. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 1/0 AWG.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

2. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
3. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than **2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter)** of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.
4. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.
5. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.
6. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.

F. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.02 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.03 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so **4 inch (100 mm)** will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from **2 inch (50 mm)** above to **6 inch (150 mm)** below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than **6 inch (150 mm)** from the foundation.

3.04 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- C. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- D. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Grounding Conductor: Bare, tinned copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
2. Gates: Must be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
3. Barbed Wire: Strands must be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.05 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of **1500 ft. (450 m)** except as follows:
 1. Fences within **100 ft. (30 m)** of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of **750 ft. (225 m)**.
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
 - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
 - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least **18 inch (460 mm)** below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of **150 ft. (45 m)** on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is **6 inch (150 mm)** below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

3.06 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are **2 inch (50 mm)** below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and must be at least **12 inch (300 mm)** deep, with cover.
1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than **60 ft. (18 m)** apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building area or item indicated.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 2. Bury ground ring not less than **24 inch (600 mm)** from building's foundation.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least **20 ft. (6.0 m)** long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create the required length.
- K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

B. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
3. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Support, anchorage, and attachment components.
 2. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch (10 mm) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch (200 mm) on center in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
 3. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inch (41.25 mm).
 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325 (Grade A325M)**.
 - 6. Toggle Bolts: All steel springhead type.
 - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.02 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SELECTION

- A. Comply with the following standards for selection and installation of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA NEIS 101
 - 2. NECA NEIS 105.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus **200 lb (90 kg)**.
- C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete **4 inch (100 mm)** thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than **4 inch (100 mm)** thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

3.04 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than **4 inch (100 mm)** larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)**, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 PAINTING

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Touchup:
 - 1. Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils** (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT-S raceways and elbows.
2. Type ERM-C-S raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
3. Type FMC-S raceways.
4. Type LFMC raceways.
5. Type PVC raceways and fittings.
6. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
7. Threaded metal joint compound.
8. Solvent cements.
9. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
10. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
11. Termination boxes.
12. Cabinets, cutout boxes, junction boxes, pull boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.
13. Cover plates for device boxes.
14. Hoods for outlet boxes.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Wireways and auxiliary gutters.
2. Surface metal raceways.
3. Floor boxes.
4. Cabinets, cutout boxes, and miscellaneous enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TYPE EMT-S RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 797 and UL Category Control Number FJMX.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - 3) Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - 4) Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Minimum Trade Size: 3/4 inch (21 mm).
 - 2) Colors: Critical operations power system (COPS) feeders: Orange.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

2.02 TYPE ERM-C-S RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERM-C-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
 - 1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 6 and UL Category Control Number DYIX.
 - 2) Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - 3) Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Minimum Trade Size: **3/4 inch (21 mm)**.
 - 2) Critical operations power system (COPS) feeders: Orange.

2.03 TYPE FMC-S RACEWAYS

- A. Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):
 - 1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standard: UL 1 and UL Category Control Number DXUZ.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Minimum Trade Size: **3/4 inch (21 mm)**.
 - 2) Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.04 TYPE LFMC RACEWAYS

- A. Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):
 - 1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standard: UL 360 and UL Category Control Number DXHR.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Minimum Trade Size: **3/4 inch (21 mm)**.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

2.05 TYPE PVC RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

1. Applicable Standards:

- a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 651 and UL Category Control Number DZYR.
 - 2) Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
- c. Options:
 - 1) Minimum Trade Size: **3/4 inch (21 mm)**.
 - 2) Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire. and for directional boring applications.

2.06 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

A. Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Raceways:

1. Applicable Standards:

- a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - 3) Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
- c. Options:
 - 1) Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - 2) Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

B. Fittings for Type EMT Raceways:

1. Applicable Standards:

- a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number FKAV.
 - 2) Material: Steel.
 - 3) Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
- c. Options:
 - 1) Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - 2) Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible external bonding jumper.

C. Fittings for Type FMC Raceways:

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number ILNR.

D. Fittings for Type LFMC and Type LFNC Raceways:

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DXAS.

2.07 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Applicable Standards:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and approved by authorities having jurisdiction for application to threaded conduit assemblies.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL 2419 and UL Category Control Number FOIZ.

2.08 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Solvent Cements for Type PVC Raceways and Fittings:

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: As recommended by conduit manufacturer in accordance with UL 514B and UL Category Control Number DWTT.
 - b. Sustainability Characteristics:

2.09 WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 870 and UL Category Control Number ZOYX.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- 2) Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- 3) Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

c. Options:

- 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1 inside; Type 3R outside unless otherwise indicated.
- 2) Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

A. Metallic Outlet Boxes:

1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Material: Sheet steel.
 - 2) Sheet Metal Depth: Minimum 2.5 inch (65 mm).
 - 3) Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb (23 kg).
 - 4) Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing up to 70 lb (32 kg).

B. Metallic Conduit Bodies:

1. Description: Means for providing access to interior of conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.
2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.

C. Metallic Device Boxes:

1. Description: Box with provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- c. Options:
 - 1) Material: Sheet steel.
 - 2) Sheet Metal Depth: minimum 2.5 inch (65 mm).
 - 3) Luminaire Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, listed and labeled for attachment of luminaire weighing up to 50 lb (23 kg).
 - 4) Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes and Covers: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing up to 70 lb (32 kg).
- D. Metallic Extension Rings:
 1. Description: Ring intended to extend sides of outlet box or device box to increase box depth, volume, or both.
 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.
- E. Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:
 1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.
 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514A and UL Category Control Number QCIT.

2.11 TERMINATION BOXES

- A. Description: Enclosure for termination base consisting of lengths of bus bars, terminal strips, or terminal blocks with provision for wire connectors to accommodate incoming or outgoing conductors or both.
- B. Termination Boxes and Termination Bases for Installation on Line Side of Service Equipment:
 1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.
 - 2) Listed and labeled for installation on line side of service equipment.
- C. Termination Boxes and Termination Bases for Installation on Load Side of Service Equipment:
 1. Applicable Standards:

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 1773 and UL Category Control Number XCKT.
 - 2) Listed and labeled for installation on load side of service equipment.

2.12 CABINETS, CUTOOT BOXES, JUNCTION BOXES, PULL BOXES, AND MISCELLANEOUS ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:

- 1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
- 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
 - a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1.

B. Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

- 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
- 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.
 - a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Degree of Protection: Type 1.

C. Outdoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:

- 1. Description: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
- 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number CYIV.
 - a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- c. Options:
 - 1) Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

D. Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

- 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
- 2. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL Category Control Number BGUZ.
 - a) Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - b) Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

2.13 **COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES**

A. Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:

- 1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
 - 2) Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
 - 2) Wallplate Material: 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) thick Type 302/304 non-magnetic stainless steel with brushed finish.

2.14 **HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES**

A. Extra-Duty, While-in-Use Hoods for Outlet Boxes:

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Applicable Standards:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Reference Standards: UL 514D and UL Category Control Numbers QCIT and QCMZ.
 - 2) Marked "Extra-Duty" in accordance with UL 514D.
 - 3) Receptacle, hood, cover plate, gaskets, and seals comply with UL 498 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A, UL 514C, or UL 50E.
 - 4) Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.
 - c. Options:
 - 1) Provides clear, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
 - 2) Manufacturer may combine nonmetallic device box with hood as extra-duty rated assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SELECTION OF RACEWAYS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Outdoors:
 1. Exposed Conduit: ERM C.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: ERM C.
 3. Direct-Buried Conduit: PVC-40.
 4. Concrete-Encased Conduit Not in Trench: PVC-40.
 5. Concrete-Encased Conduit in Trench: PVC-40.
 6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFM C.
- C. Indoors:
 1. Hazardous Classified Locations: ERM C.
 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM C. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading docks.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 3. Feeders for Critical Operations Power System (COPS): ERM C
 4. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 6. Concrete-Encased Conduit: PVC-40.
 7. Damp or Wet Locations: ERM C.
 8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- D. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings: Provide EMT, IMC, or ERM C for raceways.
- E. Raceway Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
 - 1. ERM C and IMC: Provide threaded type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

3.02 SELECTION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Degree of Protection:
 - 1. Outdoors:
 - a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
 - c. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
 - 2. Indoors:
 - a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Damp or Dusty Locations: Type 12.
 - c. Locations Exposed to Airborne Dust, Lint, Fibers, or Flyings: Type 4.
 - d. Locations Exposed to Hosedown: Type 4.
 - e. Locations Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
- C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than **6.5 ft. (2 m)** Above Floor:
 - 1. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are prohibited.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS

- A. Installation Standards:
 - 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for installation of raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
 - 3. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
 - 4. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation of steel raceways.
 - 5. Comply with NECA NEIS 111 for installation of nonmetallic raceways.
 - 6. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
 - 7. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to **1-1/4 inch (35 mm)** trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on **1-1/2 inch (41 mm)** trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
 - 8. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:
 - a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

B. General Requirements for Installation of Raceways:

1. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
2. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of **2 ft. (0.6 m)** above finished floor.
3. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run. Support within **12 inch (300 mm)** of changes in direction.
4. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
5. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
6. Support conduit within **12 inch (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
7. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
8. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of raceways at the following points:
 - a. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - b. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - c. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - d. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 - e. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 - f. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
9. Do not install conduits within **2 inch (50 mm)** of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
10. Keep raceways at least **6 inch (150 mm)** away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
11. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits **2 inch (53 mm)** trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.
12. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200 lb (90 kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inch (300 mm)** of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

C. Requirements for Installation of Specific Raceway Types:

1. Types ERM and IMC:
 - a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Types FMC, LFMC, and LFNC:
 - a. Comply with NEMA RV 3. Provide a maximum of **72 inch (1830 mm)** of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
3. Types PVC and EPEC:
 - a. Do not install Type PVC or Type EPEC conduit where ambient temperature exceeds **122 deg F (50 deg C)**. Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where in-

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

stalled in a trench outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C conductors are permitted.

- b. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding and fittings.

D. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run raceways larger than **1 inch (27 mm)** trade size below concrete slab.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints with expansion fittings at right angles to the joint.
3. Arrange raceways to ensure that each is surrounded by a minimum of **1 inch (25 mm)** of concrete without voids.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless locations have been specifically approved by Architect.
5. Turn up out of slab with PVC-40 conduit then transition to ERMC or EMT within **8 inches (200 mm)** of top of slab.

E. Raceways Below Slabs:

1. Run raceways larger than **1 inch (27 mm)** trade size below concrete slab.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building foundation walls perpendicular to wall.
3. Arrange raceways to ensure that each is surrounded by a minimum of **1 inch (25 mm)** of fill without voids. Provide conduit spacers to maintain spacing.
4. Turn up through slab with PVC-40 conduit then transition to ERMC or EMT within **8 inches (200 mm)** of top of slab.

F. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Provide EMT, IMC, or ERMC for raceways.
2. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

G. Raceway Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. EMT: Provide compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

H. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in runs of aboveground PVC that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed **30 deg F (17 deg C)** and that have straight-run length that exceeds **25 ft. (7.6 m)**. Install in runs of aboveground ERMC and EMT conduit that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed **100 deg F (55 deg C)** and that have straight-run length that exceeds **100 ft. (30 m)**.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: **155 deg F (86 deg C)** temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: **125 deg F (70 deg C)** temperature change.
 - d. Attics: **135 deg F (75 deg C)** temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least **0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C)** of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

I. Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:

1. Seal raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty or firestop-ping.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF DIRECT BURIED RACEWAYS

- A. Install direct buried raceway with a minimum **36 inch (50 mm)** of well tramped earth above the top of the raceway.
- B. Install underground warning tape per requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems".

3.05 INSTALLATION OF SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install surface raceway with a minimum **2 inch (50 mm)** radius control at bend points.
- C. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding **48 inch (1200 mm)** and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are unacceptable support methods.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
- B. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
- D. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- E. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- F. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
- G. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.
- H. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- I. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- J. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- K. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the lock-nut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
- L. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
 - 1. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
 - 2. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.

3.07 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.08 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

3.09 CLEANING

- A. Boxes: Remove construction dust and debris from device boxes, outlet boxes, and floor-mounted enclosures before installing wallplates, covers, and hoods.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Duct accessories.
4. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
5. Precast manholes.
6. Utility structure accessories.
7. Flowable fill.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit
- E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.
5. Flowable fill.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
 - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
 - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - c. Include cover design.
 - d. Include grounding details.
 - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and, comply with ASTM C 858.

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches (900 mm) below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

- A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.
- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.03 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.04 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armorcast Products Company.
 - 2. NewBasis.
 - 3. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: Gray.
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC." or as indicated for each service.
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)** and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.05 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Description: Low-strength-concrete, flowable-slurry mix.
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I, portland.
 - 2. Density: **115- to 145-lb/cu. ft. (1840- to 2325-kg/cu. m).**
 - 3. Aggregates:
 - a. ASTM C33, natural sand, fine and crushed gravel or stone, coarse.
 - 4. Admixture: ASTM C618, fly-ash mineral.
 - 5. Water: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
 - 6. Strength: **100 to 200 psig (690 to 1380 kPa)** at 28 days.
 - 7. Color:
 - a. Electrical Power Lines and Cables: Red.
 - b. Fiber Optics, Communications, Alarms: Orange.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

3.02 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Underground Ducts Crossing Driveways, Roadways, and Railroads: Type EPC-40 PVC RNC, encased in reinforced concrete.
- D. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased GRC.

3.03 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
 - 1. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
 - 3. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

3.04 EARTHWORK

- A. Restoration: Replace area immediately after backfilling is completed or after construction vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching.
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures.

3.05 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in both directions.

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of **48 inches (1200 mm)**, both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.
1. Duct shall have maximum of two 90 degree bends or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.
- E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.
- F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- G. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately **10 inches (250 mm)** o.c. for **5-inch (125-mm)** duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing **10 feet (3 m)** from the end bell, without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct with calculated expansion of more than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- H. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least **10 feet (3 m)** outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- I. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least **15-psig (1.03-MPa)** hydrostatic pressure.
- J. Pulling Cord: Install **200-lbf- (1000-N-)** test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- K. Concrete-Encased Ducts and Duct Bank:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 31 for pipes less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench **3 inches (75 mm)** wider than duct on each side.
 3. Depth: Install so top of duct envelope is at least **24 inches (600 mm)** below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least **30 inches (750 mm)** below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated. Where cover over top of piping is less than required depth, cover with flowable fill up to 6 inches below finished grade.
 4. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 5. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per **20 feet (6 m)** of duct. Place spacers within **24 inches (600 mm)** of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 6. Minimum Space between Duct: **3 inches (75 mm)** between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, **2 inches (50 mm)** between ducts for like services, and **4 inches (100 mm)** between power and communications ducts.

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

7. Elbows: Use manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple RNC duct to GRC with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete.
 - b. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished floor and minimum **3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of slab.
 - c. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished floor and no less than **3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of slab.
 8. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct where crossing disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 9. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
 10. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, **2 inches (50 mm)** between duct of like services, and **4 inches (100 mm)** between power and communications ducts.
 11. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written instructions, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install **3/4-inch (15-mm)** reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of **18 inches (450 mm)** into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
 12. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03. Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between duct and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow around duct and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-installation application.
- L. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench **3 inches (75 mm)** wider than duct on each side.
 3. Depth: Install top of duct at least **36 inches (900 mm)** below finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Where cover over top of piping is less than required depth, cover with flowable fill up to 6 inches below finished grade.
 4. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 5. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than four spacers per **20 feet (6 m)** of duct. Place spacers within **24 inches (600 mm)** of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately **6 inches (150 mm)** between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.

6. Install duct with a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** between ducts for like services and **6 inches (150 mm)** between power and communications duct.
7. Install manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct.
 - a. Couple RNC duct to GRC with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete.
 - b. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished floor and minimum **3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of slab.
 - c. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished floor and no less than **3 inches (75 mm)** from conduit side to edge of slab.
8. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to **4 inches (100 mm)** over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
 - a. Place minimum **3 inches (75 mm)** of sand as a bed for duct. Place sand to a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** above top level of duct.
 - b. Place minimum **6 inches (150 mm)** of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.
- M. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than **12 inches (300 mm)** above all concrete-encased duct and duct banks and approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** below grade. Align tape parallel to and within **3 inches (75 mm)** of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each **12-inch (300-mm)** increment of duct-bank width over a nominal **18 inches (450 mm)**. Space additional tapes **12 inches (300 mm)** apart, horizontally.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1-inch (25-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least **15 inches (375 mm)** below finished grade.
 2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
 3. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
 4. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
- C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- D. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes after concrete has cured at least three days. After duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- E. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, and cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.
- F. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than **3-7/8 inches (97 mm)** for manholes and **2 inches (50 mm)** for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- E. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- F. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.
1. Concrete: **3000 psi (20 kPa)**, 28-day strength, complying with Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
 2. Dimensions: **10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep)**.

3.08 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

3.09 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round sleeves.
2. Rectangular sleeves.
3. Sleeve seal systems.
4. Grout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ROUND SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:

1. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.

2.02 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

A. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Rectangular:

1. Description:
 - a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than **50 inch (1270 mm)** and with no side larger than **16 inch (400 mm)**, thickness must be **0.052 inch (1.3 mm)**.
 - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than **50 inch (1270 mm)** or with one or more sides larger than **16 inch (400 mm)**, thickness must be **0.138 inch (3.5 mm)**.

2.03 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
(continued):

1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
2. Design Mix: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless sleeve seal system is to be installed.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- B. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- C. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch (25 mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
- B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
- C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
- D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
(continued):

- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
(continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Tapes and stencils.
4. Signs.
5. Paint for identification.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

2.02 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
4. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.

C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

D. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.03 LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

B. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Minimum Nominal Size:

- a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
- b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
- c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Ceiling Markers:

- a. Letter Color: Black.
- b. Background Color: Clear.
- c. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- d. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- e. Label Content: Include either the equipment tag identifier or a clear description of the concealed component, along with the system or service abbreviation. Label content shall match identifiers shown on Drawings or be descriptive enough for field recognition and maintenance access.
 - 1) System of Service Abbreviations: "ELEC".
 - 2) Components: "J-BOX, DISCONNECT, CONTACTOR, LTG CTRL".

2.04 TAPES AND STENCILS

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than **3 mils (0.08 mm)** thick by **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- B. Tape and Stencil: **4-inch- (100-mm-)** wide black stripes on **10-inch (250-mm)** centers placed diagonally over orange background and are **12 inches (300 mm)** wide. Stop stripes at legends.
- C. Floor Marking Tape: **2-inch- (50-mm-)** wide, **5-mil (0.125-mm)** pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
- D. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 2. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
 - 3. Description:
 - a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
 - c. Overall Thickness: **5 mils (0.125 mm)**.
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: **0.35 mil (0.00889 mm)**.
 - e. Weight: **28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m)**.
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: **70 lbf (311.3 N)** and **4600 psi (31.7 MPa)**.

2.05 SIGNS

- A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Engraved legend.
 - 2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, minimum **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 - b. For signs larger than **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

3. "UPS."
- M. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- O. Ceiling Marker Labels:
 1. Apply labels for each concealed major item of electrical equipment or component requiring service or maintenance.
 2. Align labels neatly, parallel to ceiling edges or panel orientation.
 3. Apply after ceiling installation and verification of concealed item locations.
 4. Do not install labels on surfaces subject to frequent replacement or repainting without coordination.
 5. Locate ceiling marker labels where accessible and visible.
 6. Application Locations:
 - a. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings (ACT):
 - 1) Apply label to the face of the ceiling grid tee directly adjacent to or centered over the concealed item.
 - 2) If grid location is not feasible, affix to accessible tile surface, avoiding any tile likely to be replaced or removed.
 - b. Gypsum Board or Hard-Lid Ceilings with Access Panels:
 - 1) Apply label directly to the surface of the access panel.
 - 2) Label shall be centered, upright, and clearly legible from floor level.
 - c. Exposed Ceilings or Open Structures:
 - 1) Apply label to the nearest permanent building surface or equipment mounting plate visible from below.
 - 2) If no surface is available, affix to suspended tag or placard mounted below the item.
 - d. Multiple Components at Single Access Location:
 - 1) Use a single label listing all concealed components above the ceiling at that location, aligned vertically or in column format.
 - 2) Use consistent labeling format and spacing.
- P. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches (150 mm)** where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- Q. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- R. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

S. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

T. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using UV-stabilized cable ties.

U. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 50 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive wraparound labels.
1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-foot (15-m)** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot (7.6-m)** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend, circuit designation, and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.
1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at **50-foot (15-m)** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot (7.6-m)** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

- H. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- J. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- L. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- O. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- P. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- Q. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
 - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - e. Enclosed switches.
 - f. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - g. Enclosed controllers.
 - h. Variable-speed controllers.
 - i. Power-transfer equipment.
 - j. Battery-inverter units.
 - k. Battery racks.
 - l. Power-generating units.
 - m. UPS equipment.

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS (continued):

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
 - 2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - 1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - 2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES (continued):

A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
 - c. Short-circuit study data files.
 - d. Power system data.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
 1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

2.02 Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EasyPower, LLC (formerly ESA Inc.).
 2. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
 1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
 - C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.03 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES (continued):

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.
 - 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
 - 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
 - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
 - 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 - 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
 - 1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
 - 2. Power sources available.
 - 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
 - 4. Conductors.
 - 5. Transformer data.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
 - 1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.
 - 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES (continued):

- d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
- 3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.
 - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 - 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Division 01 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 - 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 - 3. Power sources and ties.
 - 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 - 5. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 - 6. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 - 7. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
 - 8. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 - 9. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 - 10. Derating factors.

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES (continued):

3.02 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
- E. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- F. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- G. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
 - 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- H. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION 260573.13

SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.
 - 1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
 - 2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
 - 3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES (continued):

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
 - a. Final one-line diagram.
 - b. Final protective device coordination study.
 - c. Coordination study data files.
 - d. List of all protective device settings.
 - e. Time-current coordination curves.
 - f. Power system data.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:
 - 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
 - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

2.02 [Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:](#)

- 1. [EasyPower, LLC \(formerly ESA Inc.\)](#).
 - 2. [Power Analytics, Corporation](#).
 - 3. [SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.](#)
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES (continued):

1. Optional Features:
 - a. Arcing faults.
 - b. Simultaneous faults.
 - c. Explicit negative sequence.
 - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.03 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
 6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
 7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
 - a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- D. Protective Device Coordination Study:
 1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
 - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
 - 1) Device tag.
 - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
 - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
 - b. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
 - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
 - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
 1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES (continued):

2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
 - a. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
 - b. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
 - c. Cables and conductors damage curves.
 - d. Ground-fault protective devices.
 - e. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
 - f. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
 - g. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
6. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
7. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.02 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES (continued):

4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
11. Maximum demands from service meters.
12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
 - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.

3.03 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Extent of electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES (continued):

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

H. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.

I. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

J. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.

K. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

L. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

M. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

3.04 FIELD ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.

END OF SECTION 260573.16

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DEFINITIONS

- A. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- E. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- H. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:
 - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
 - 3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS (continued):

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. EasyPower, LLC (formerly ESA Inc.).
 2. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 3. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

2.02 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS (continued):

1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 2. Protective device clearing time.
 3. Duration of arc.
 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 5. Restricted approach boundary.
 6. Limited approach boundary.
 7. Working distance.
 8. Incident energy.
 9. Hazard risk category.
 10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

2.03 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a **3.5-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm)** self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.
- B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 1. Location designation.
 2. Nominal voltage.
 3. Protection boundaries.
 - a. Arc-flash boundary.
 - b. Restricted approach boundary.
 - c. Limited approach boundary.
 4. Arc flash PPE category.
 5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
 6. Available incident energy.
 7. Working distance.
 8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

**Jackson County Sheriff's Office
New Facility
September 25, 2025**

**260573.19-3
100% Construction Documents**

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS (continued):

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.02 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
 - 1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
 - 2. Calculate arc-flash energy at 85 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to IEEE 1584 recommendations.
 - 3. Calculate arc-flash energy at 38 percent of maximum short-circuit current according to NFPA 70E recommendations.
 - 4. Calculate arc-flash energy with the utility contribution at a minimum and assume no motor contribution.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240 V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
 - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
 - 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
 - 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.03 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS (continued):

1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
 5. Full-load current of all loads.
 6. Voltage level at each bus.
 7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 8. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 9. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 10. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 11. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
 12. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 13. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 14. Medium-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, conductor material, conductor construction and metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.04 LABELING

- A. Apply one arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.
- B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
 1. Panelboard and safety switch over 250 V.
 2. Applicable panelboard and safety switch under 250 V.
- C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
 1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
 2. Indicate protection level required.

3.05 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS (continued):

- A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System Analysis Specialist.

END OF SECTION 260573.19

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electronic time switches.
2. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, flexible mounting.
3. Outdoor photoelectric switches, low voltage.
4. Daylight-harvesting dimming controls, digital.
5. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
6. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
7. Emergency shunt relay.
8. Conductors and cables.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ELECTRONIC TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
3. Contact Rating: 30 A inductive or resistive, 240 V(ac).
4. Programs:
 - a. Each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels.
6. Astronomic Time: All channels.
7. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
8. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.02 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, LOW VOLTAGE

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. **Cooper Industries, Inc.**
 2. **Intermatic, Inc.**
 3. **Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.**
- B. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts rated for 24 V(dc) at 1 A, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with luminaire, power pack, or lighting control panelboard.
1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: **1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lx)**, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Mounting: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** threaded male conduit.
 5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
 6. Power Pack:
 - a. Digital controller capable of accepting three 8PSJ inputs with two outputs rated for 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac). Sensor has 24 V(dc), Class 2 power source.
 - 1) With integral current monitoring.
 - 2) Plenum rated.

2.03 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS, DIGITAL

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. **Crestron Electronics, Inc.**
 2. **Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.**
 3. **Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.**
 4. **Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.**
 5. **WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.**
- B. Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, lights are dimmed.
1. Lighting control set point is based on the following two lighting conditions:
 - a. When no daylight is present (target level).
 - b. When significant daylight is present.
 2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
 - a. Initial setup tool.
 - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power pack, to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Sensor Output: zero to 10 V(dc) to operate luminaires. Sensor is powered by controller unit.

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

3. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc (120 to 640 lx).
- E. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting two or three 8PSJ inputs with one, two, or three output(s) rated for 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac) each with a zero to 10 V(dc) dimming output. Sensor has 24 V(dc) Class 2 power source.
 1. With integral current monitoring.
 2. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 3. Plenum rated.

2.04 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. [Creston Electronics, Inc.](#)
 2. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.](#)
 3. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.](#)
 4. [Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.](#)
 5. [WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.](#)
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
 1. Wall or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 2. Dual technology.
 3. Separate power pack.
 4. Hardwired connection to switch.
 5. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 6. Operation:
 - a. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor must be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 8. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting two or three 8PSJ inputs with one, two, or three output(s) rated for 10 A incandescent or LED load at 120 and 277 V(ac) each with a zero to 10 V(dc) dimming output. Sensor has 24 V(dc) Class 2 power source.
 - a. With integral current monitoring.
 - b. Plenum rated.
 9. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position in a standard device box or outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2 inch (13 mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 10. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 11. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Wall or ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of **6 inch (150 mm)** minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than **36 sq. inch (23 200 sq. mm)**, and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than **12 inch (305 mm)** in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of **12 inch/s (305 mm/s)**.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)** when mounted on a **96 inch (2440 mm)** high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **2000 sq. ft. (220 sq. m)** when mounted **48 inch (1200 mm)** above finished floor.

2.05 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
 1. Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
 2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
 3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.
- B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on buttons. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

2.06 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Creston Electronics, Inc.
 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 5. WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox using hardwired connection.
 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, **32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C)**.
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800 VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200 VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800 W incandescent.
- C. Description:
 1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of **900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m)**.
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
 3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off." Provide dual relay where indicated on plans.
 4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
 5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

7. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
9. Color: Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
10. Faceplate: Match wiring device faceplates specified in Specification 262726 "Wiring Devices."

2.07 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.

2.08 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Balanced Twisted Pair Control Cable: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is **1/2 inch (13 mm)** and Section 260526 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables.".
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Manufacturer Services:
 - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Lighting control panels using mechanically held relays for switching.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Operational documentation for software and firmware.

1.03 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and prepare panels for installation according to NECA 407.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone multipreset modular controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Damage from transient voltage surges.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels. Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS (continued):

- B. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- E. Comply with UL 916.

2.02 NETWORKED LIGHTING CONTROL PANELS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Crestron Electronics, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc](#)
 - 3. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.](#)
 - 5. [WattStopper; Legrand North America, LLC.](#)
- B. Description: Lighting control panels using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and appliances. The panels shall be capable of being interconnected with digital communications to appear to the operator as a single lighting control system.
- C. Lighting Control Panels:
 - 1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays, and on-board timing and control unit.
 - 2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.
- D. Main Control Unit: Installed in the main lighting control panel only; powered from the branch circuit of the standard control unit.
 - 1. Ethernet Communications: Comply with TCP/IP protocol. The main control unit shall provide for programming of all control functions of the main and all networked slave lighting control panels including timing, sequencing, and overriding.
 - 2. Web Server: Display information listed below over a standard Web-enabled server for displaying information over a standard browser.
 - a. A secure, password-protected login screen for modifying operational parameters, accessible to authorized users via Web page interface.
 - b. Panel summary showing the master and slave panels connected to the controller.
 - c. Controller diagnostic information.
 - d. Show front panel mimic screens for setting up controller parameters, input types, zones, and operating schedules. These mimic screens shall also allow direct breaker control and zone overrides.
 - 3. Timing Unit:
 - a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight savings and leap year.
 - b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
 - c. Eight independent schedules, each having 24 time periods.
 - d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
 - e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
 - f. 16 special date periods.

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS (continued):

4. Time Synchronization: The timing unit shall be updated not less than every six hour(s) with the network time server.
5. Sequencing Control with Override:
 - a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
 - b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
 - c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy sensor.
 - d. Override control "blinking warning" shall warn occupants approximately five minutes before actuating the off sequence.
 - e. Download firmware to the latest version offered by manufacturer.
- E. Standard Control Unit, Installed in All Lighting Control Panels: Contain electronic controls for programming the operation of the relays in the control panel, contain the status of relays, and contain communications link to enable the digital functions of the main control unit. Comply with UL 916.
 1. Electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays, and display relay on-time.
 2. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation.
 3. Integral keypad and digital-display front panel for local setup, including the following:
 - a. Blink notice, time adjustable from software.
 - b. Ability to log and display relay on-time.
 - c. Capability for accepting downloadable firmware so that the latest production features may be added in the future without replacing the module.
- F. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 5 kA. Each relay shall have a matched zero to 10 V(dc) dimming output. Control shall be digital control network.
- G. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, UL listed, sized for connected equipment, plus not less than 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and low-voltage photo sensors.
- H. Operator Interface: At the main control unit, provide interface for a tethered connection of a portable PC running MS Windows for configuring all networked lighting control panels using setup software designed for the specified operating system. Include one portable device for initial programming of the system and training of Owner's personnel. That device shall remain the property of Owner.
 1. Standard and main control units. Integral alphanumeric keypad and digital display, and intuitive drop-down menus to assist in programming.
- I. Software:
 1. Menu-driven data entry.
 2. Online and offline programming and editing.
 3. Provide for entry of the room or space designation for the load side of each relay.
 4. Monitor and control all relays, showing actual relay state and the name of the automatic actuating control, if any.
 5. Size the software appropriate to the system.
- J. Size the software appropriate to the system.

2.03 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS (continued):

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
 - 1. Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
 - 2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
 - 3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.
- B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

2.04 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES

- A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.
- B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors: Comply with Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

2.05 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Twisted-Pair Data Cable: Category 6. Comply with requirements for twisted pair cabling in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panels according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panels for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS (continued):

- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.03 PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.
- C. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Create a directory to indicate loads served by each relay; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a PC or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are unacceptable.
- D. Lighting Control Panel Nameplates: Label each panel with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.05 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Before engaging in equipment startup and programming, schedule a meeting with the Owner and confirm all programming settings, schedules, pre-set scenes and special functions specific to the Owner's needs. Document the settings determined in the meeting and send to Engineer for record keeping.
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between panels, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.

SECTION 260943.23 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS (continued):

3.06 **ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.07 **SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT**

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.08 **DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

END OF SECTION 260943.23

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboard.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 and NEMA PB 1.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding **minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C)** to **plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C)**.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet (2000 m)**.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding **6600 feet (2000 m)**.

1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PANELBOARDS CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen or wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
 - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 - 4. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel , factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel .
- G. Incoming Mains:
 - 1. Location: As indicated on plans.
 - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - a. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
 - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
 - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 - 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 - 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
 - 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 - 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 - 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 - 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- J. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Ten percent.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.02 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 4. ABB Inc
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker Fused switch or Lugs only.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers or fused switches as indicated.

2.03 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 4. ABB Inc
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only, as indicated.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.04 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

2. [SIEMENS Industry, Inc.: Energy Management Division.](#)
3. [Square D; by Schneider Electric.](#)
4. [ABB Inc](#)

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
5. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
6. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
7. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Ground-Fault Protection: Remote-mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - f. Shunt Trip: 24-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.
 - g. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 110 amperes shall have electronic adjustable trip units.
 - h. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle.

2.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- F. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- G. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports **5/8 inch (16 mm)** in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- H. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- J. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- K. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 - 2. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- B. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General-use switches.
2. General-grade single straight-blade receptacles.
3. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
4. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
5. Locking receptacles.
6. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
7. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Toggle switches.
2. Single straight-blade receptacles
3. Duplex straight-blade receptacles.
4. Receptacles with GFCI device.
5. USB Receptacles
6. Locking receptacles.
7. Spring-driven commercial/industrial-use cord reels.
8. Cord connectors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- C. Device Color:
1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Power System: Red.
 3. Wiring Devices Connected to Critical Operations Power System: Orange.
 4. Wiring Devices Connected to Optional Standby Power System: Gray.

2.02 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER SWITCHES

A. Toggle Switch:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

- a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.
- 3. Options:
 - a. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, 120-277 V, 20 A.

2.03 GENERAL-GRADE SINGLE STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Single Straight-Blade Receptacle:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 - 3. Options:
 - a. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
 - 2) General-duty, NEMA 6-20R.
 - 3) Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-30R, NEMA 5-50R.
 - 4) Heavy-duty, NEMA 6-30R, NEMA 6-50R.
 - 5) Heavy-duty, NEMA 7-20R, NEMA 7-30R, NEMA 7-50R.
 - 6) Heavy-duty, NEMA 14-20R, NEMA 14-30R (Dryer), NEMA 14-50R (Range), NEMA 14-60R.
 - 7) Heavy-duty, NEMA 15-20R, NEMA 15-30R, NEMA 15-50R NEMA 15-60R.
 - 8) Heavy-duty, NEMA 18-20R, NEMA 18-30R, NEMA 18-50R NEMA 18-60R.

2.04 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

3. Options:
 - a. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
 - 2) General-duty, NEMA 6-20R.
 - 3) Heavy-duty, NEMA 7-15R.

B. Isolated Ground Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with Type 3 Surge Protective Device:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards:
 - 1) UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 - 2) Surge Protective Devices: UL 1449, Type 3.
3. Options:
 - a. Configuration: Heavy-duty, smooth face, NEMA 5-20R.

2.05 RECEPTACLES WITH ARC-FAULT AND GROUND-FAULT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. General-Grade, Weather-Resistant, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with GFCI Device:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXS, UL 498, and UL 943.
3. Options:
 - a. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.

2.06 LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. NEMA, 125 V, Locking Receptacle:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 3. Options:
 - a. Device Color: Black with yellow voltage indication on face.
 - b. Configuration: 2 pole, 3 wire, grounding, NEMA L5-20R, NEMA L5-30R.
- B. NEMA, 250 V, Locking Receptacle:
1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 3. Options:
 - a. Device Color: Black with blue voltage indication on face.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) 2 pole, 3 wire, grounding, NEMA L6-20R, NEMA L6-30R.
 - 2) 3 pole, 4 wire, grounding, NEMA L15-20R, NEMA L15-30R.
 - 3) 4 pole, 4 wire, non-grounding, NEMA L18-20R, NEMA L18-30R.
 - 4) 4 pole, 5 wire, grounding, NEMA L21-20R, NEMA L21-30R.

2.07 SPECIAL-PURPOSE POWER OUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Spring-Driven Commercial/Industrial-Use Cord Reel, No. 12 AWG Conductors:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN SBCV and UL 355.
 - b. Spring take-up retraction mechanism.
 3. Options:
 - a. Electrical Rating with Cable: 600 V, 20 A.
 - b. Color: Black.
 - c. Enclosure Degree of Protection: Type 4.
 - d. Ball stop.
 - e. Pivot base.
 - f. Spool Capacity:
 - 1) No. 12 AWG, two wires and equipment ground, 30 ft (9.1 m).

2.08 CONNECTORS, CORDS, AND PLUGS

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

- A. Outdoor-Use, Watertight, Sealed Cord Connector:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN AXUT and UL 498.

2.09 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material: **0.035-inch- (1-mm-)** thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
 - 3. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Receptacles:
 - 1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.
- B. Cord Reels:
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for cord reel mounting and power connections to verify actual locations of mounts and power connections before cord reel installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and ceilings for suitable conditions where cord reel will be installed.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

B. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.

C. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than **6 inches (152 mm)** in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

D. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

E. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

3.03 SELECTION OF GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Provide non-feed-through GFCI receptacles.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Identification:

1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

- a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 3. Receptacle Orientation: Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.
 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Identification:
 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.
 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Identification:
 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Insert and remove test plug to verify that device is securely mounted.
 2. Verify polarity of hot and neutral pins.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES (continued):

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL OF LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Insert and remove test plug to verify that device is securely mounted.
2. Verify polarity of hot and neutral pins.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

C. Assemble and submit test and inspection reports.

3.09 PROTECTION

A. Devices:

1. Schedule and sequence installation to minimize risk of contamination of wires and cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers, and cover plates by plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other materials.
2. After installation, protect wires and cables, devices, device boxes, outlet boxes, covers, and cover plates from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

B. Cord Reels and Fittings:

1. After installation, protect cord reels and fittings from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

C. Connectors, Cords, and Plugs:

1. After installation, protect connectors, cords, and plugs from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Enclosures.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and CAPTOR, Systems Analysis, Inc. electronic format.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS (continued):

1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than **minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C)** and not exceeding **104 deg F (40 deg C)**.
 2. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet (2010 m)**.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.02 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. ABB Inc.
 2. Eaton.
 3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 4. Square D.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS (continued):

- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses and lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses and lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.
 - 5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.03 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. **Eaton.**
 - 2. **ABB Inc.**
 - 3. **SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.**
 - 4. **Square D.**
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 24-V ac.
 - 5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.04 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1), gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) or a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel), copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9), as indicated.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS (continued):

- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1), directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) or externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9). The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.02 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS (continued):

- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
- C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Diesel engine.
 2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
 3. Control and monitoring.
 4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
 5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
 6. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
 7. Vibration isolation devices.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
- C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
 3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
 4. Include fuel consumption in **gallons per hour (liters per hour)** at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
 5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
 6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in **cubic feet per minute (cubic meters per minute)** at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of **95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F (35, 27, 21, and 10 deg C)**. Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
 7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

- A. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
 - 2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
 - 3. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
 - 4. Report of sound generation.
 - 5. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
 - 6. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
 - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
 - c. Training plan.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
 - 2. Cummins Power Generation.
 - 3. Generac.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

4. Kohler Power Systems.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- B. NFPA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 99.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- E. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

2.03 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- C. Power Rating: Standby.
- D. Induction Method: Forced Induction.
- E. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- F. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.
- G. Capacities and Characteristics:

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

H. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:

1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
 - a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
 - a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.
10. Start Time:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.

2.04 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D975, diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.
 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

- D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with UL 499 and with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- E. Integral Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
 - 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anti-corrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 - 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 - 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 - 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 - 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- F. Muffler/Silencer:
 - 1. Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
 - a. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
 - b. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.
 - 1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
 - 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
 - 4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
 - 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 - 6. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
 - 7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
 - 8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

- b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F (minus 40 to plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
- c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
- d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
- e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
- f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.05 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 37.
- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
 - 1. Tank level indicator.
 - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for planned operation plus fuel for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills.
 - 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
 - 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
 - 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.06 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shut-down. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.
- B. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- C. Comply with UL 508A.
- D. Configuration:
 - 1. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

E. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
 - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 - c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - d. Running-time meter.
 - e. AC voltmeter, for each phase.
 - f. AC ammeter, for each phase.
 - g. AC frequency meter.
 - h. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm indication, including the following:
 - a. Cranking control equipment.
 - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 - d. Overcrank alarm.
 - e. Overcrank shutdown device.
 - f. Low-water temperature alarm.
 - g. High engine temperature prealarm.
 - h. High engine temperature.
 - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
 - j. Overspeed alarm.
 - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
 - l. Low fuel main tank.
 - 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
 - m. Coolant low-level alarm.
 - n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 - o. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
 - p. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
 - q. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 - r. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
 - s. EPS load indicator.
 - t. Battery high-voltage alarm.
 - u. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 - v. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 - w. Battery low-voltage alarm.
 - x. Lamp test.
 - y. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 - z. Remote manual stop shutdown device.
 - aa. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
 - bb. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
 - cc. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
 - dd. Hours of operation.
 - ee. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, hertz, kilowatt, kilovolt ampere, and power factor.

F. Connection to Datalink:

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
 2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via ModBus. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- G. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.
1. Overcrank alarm.
 2. Low water-temperature alarm.
 3. High engine temperature prealarm.
 4. High engine temperature alarm.
 5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 6. Overspeed alarm.
 7. Low fuel main tank alarm.
 8. Low coolant level alarm.
 9. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
 12. Air shutdown damper when used.
 13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 15. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
- H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.07 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs.
1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
 2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.
- B. Generator Overcurrent Protective Device:
1. Molded-case circuit breaker, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489:
 - a. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 - b. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 - c. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
 - d. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

- C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:
 - 1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.
 - 2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
 - 3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the engine generator.
 - 4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.
- D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
 - 1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.

2.08 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
- E. Range: Provide broad range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- G. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
 - 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
 - 2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
 - 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
 - 4. Maintain frequency within 10 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.
- J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- L. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

2.09 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

A. Description:

1. Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing; wind resistant up to **150 mph (240 km/h)**. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

- a. Sound Attenuation Level: Level 2.

B. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads up to **100 mph (160 km/h).**

C. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

D. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.

E. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.

F. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

G. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.
2. Minimum Deflection: **1 inch (25 mm)**.

2.11 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full load run.
4. Maximum power.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- E. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- C. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

- A. Identify system components according to Division 23 and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
 - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
 - a) Machines Larger Than **200 hp (150 kW)**: Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
 - b) Machines **200 hp (150 kW)** or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
 - 2) Test protective relay devices.
 - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
 - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
 - 5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
 - 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
 - 2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
 - 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
 - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 - 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
 6. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations **25 feet (8 m)** from edge of the generator enclosure, and compare measured levels with required values.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
 - D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
 - E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
 - G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.
 - J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

3.06 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213.13

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interruptible (fast-transfer) central battery equipment.
 - 2. Enclosures.
 - 3. Optional and accessory features.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. Interruptible: As used in the Section Text, an off-line, passive-standby or line-interactive, inverter-only unit, with an intentional interruption of power to the load until an internal transfer switch picks up and transfers the load to the unit's inverter and internal battery source on loss of the "normal" source, and then retransfers to the "normal" source when it is restored. Transfer time can be "slow" (up to approximately 1 second) or "fast" (2-4 ms or 40-50 ms, depending on manufacturer).
- C. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- D. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- E. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
- F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- G. PC: Personal computer.
- H. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
- I. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion (also listed as "THD" in catalog data by manufacturers).
- J. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
- K. VRLA: Valve-regulated lead acid.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
 - 1. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, shipping splits, and furnished options, specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, ventilation requirements, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

3. Include system one-line diagram, internal and interconnecting wiring; and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include elevation, details, and legends of control and indication displays.
5. Include -circuit current (withstand) rating of unit.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of central battery equipment.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For central battery equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store equipment in spaces having environments controlled within manufacturers' written instructions for ambient temperature and humidity conditions for non-operating equipment.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
 2. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
 3. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
 4. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace central battery equipment that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Special warranty, applying to batteries only, applies to materials only, on a prorated basis, for period specified.
 1. Warranty Period: Include the following warranty periods, from date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Central Battery Equipment (excluding Batteries): One year(s).
 - b. Standard VRLA Batteries:
 - 1) Full Warranty: One year(s).
 - 2) Pro Rata: Nine years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

2.02 INTERRUPTIBLE (FAST-TRANSFER) CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ABB, Electrification Business.
 2. Controlled Power Company; an Emerson company.
 3. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 5. LVS Controls.
 6. Myers Emergency Power Systems.
 7. Signify North America Corporation (formerly Philips Lighting).
- B. **General Requirements for Interruptible (Fast-Transfer) Central Battery Equipment:**
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label central battery equipment to comply with UL 924.
 3. Comply with the IBC, NFPA 70, and NFPA 101.
 4. Comply with NEMA PE 1.
- C. **Performance Requirements:**
1. Fast-Transfer Central Battery Equipment: Line-interactive (on-line) system. Automatically sense loss of normal ac supply and use a solid-state static switch to transfer load. Transfer in 40-50 ms or less from normal supply to battery-inverter supply.
 2. Automatic Operation:
 - a. Normal Conditions: Supply the load with ac power flowing from normal ac power input terminals, bypassing inverter, with battery connected in parallel via rectifier/charger output.
 - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal ac supply deviates from specified voltage, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
 - c. If normal power fails, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
 - d. If a fault occurs in system when being supplied by inverter and current flows in excess of the overload rating of inverter, inverter automatically protects itself against damage from overloads and short circuits by shutting down.
 - e. When normal ac power is restored at input supply terminals of unit, controls automatically retransfer the load back to the normal ac supply, with a momentary loss of power to the load. Rectifier/charger then recharges battery.
 - f. If normal power failure is prolonged (more than 90 minutes), integral low-voltage battery protective circuit disconnects battery and prevents battery from damage due to deep discharge.
 - g. If battery becomes discharged, and when normal ac supply is again available, rectifier/charger recharges battery. When battery is fully charged, rectifier/charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.
 - h. If battery is disconnected, and normal ac power is available, central battery equipment continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of output bus.
- D. **Unit Operating Requirements:**
1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of central battery equipment input voltage rating.
 2. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of central battery equipment frequency rating.
 3. Synchronizing Slew Rate: 1 Hz per second, maximum.
 4. Minimum Off-Line Efficiency: 95 percent at 60 Hz, full load.

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or operating condition.
 6. Ambient Temperature Rating (Other Than Batteries): Not less than 68 deg F (20 deg C) and not exceeding 86 deg F (30 deg C).
 7. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Other Than Batteries): Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 158 deg F (70 deg C).
 8. Ambient Temperature Rating (Batteries): Not less than 32 deg F (0 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 9. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Batteries): Not less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 10. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
 11. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet (1005 m).
 12. Off-Line Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
- E. Inverter and Controls Logic: Microprocessor based, isolated from all power circuits; provides complete self-diagnostics, periodic automatic testing and reporting; with alarms.
- F. Controls and Indication:
1. Status Indication: Door-mounted, labeled LED indicators or digital screen displaying the following conditions:
 - a. Normal power available.
 - b. Status of system.
 - c. Battery charging status.
 - d. On battery power.
 - e. System fault.
 - f. External fault.
 2. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
 - a. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include the following:
 - 1) Keys for METER, CONTROL, PROGRAM, and CLEAR modes.
 - 2) Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least two levels of access: View only; and view, operate, and service.
 - 3) Control Authority: Supports at least three conditions: Off, local manual control at unit and local automatic control at unit.
 - b. Digital Display: Plain-English language messages on a digital display; provide the following historical logging information and displays:
 - 1) Real-time clock with current time and date.
 - 2) Tests and Events Logs: Record and store up to 25 tests and events.
 - a) Dates.
 - b) Times.
 - c) Durations.
 - d) Output voltage and currents.
 - 3) Alarm Logs: Record and store up to 25 alarms.
 - a) Dates.
 - b) Times.

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

- c) Alarm type.
 - d) .
 - 4) Metering Functions: Display central battery equipment metering parameters including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a) Input and output voltage (V ac) and output current (A ac).
 - b) Battery voltage (V dc) and current (A ac).
 - c) Fault or alarming status (code).
 - d) Power output (VA).
 - e) Inverter load (W).
 - f) Ambient temperature (deg F).
 - g) System run time (cumulative days).
 - h) Inverter run time (cumulative minutes).
 - 5) Alarm Functions: Digital display mounted flush in unit door and connected to display central battery equipment parameters including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a) High/low battery charge voltage.
 - b) High/low input voltage.
 - c) Battery nearing low-voltage condition.
 - d) Battery low voltage.
 - e) High ambient temperature.
 - f) Inverter fault.
 - g) Output fault.
 - h) Output overload.
3. Remote Signal Interfaces:
- a. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of one programmable (Form C) dry-circuit relay output(s) (120-V ac, 2 A) for remote indication of the following:
 - 1) Fault or status indication.
 - 2) On bypass.
 - 3) Low battery.
 - 4) .
 - b. Communications Interface: Factory-installed hardware and software to enable a remote PC to program central battery equipment and monitor and display status and alarms.
 - 1) Communications Ports: RS-232 .
- G. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
- 1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide protection against damage from supply voltage surges as defined in IEEE C62.45, Category B and C.
 - 2. Integral, programmable, self-diagnostic and self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.
 - 3. Battery deep-discharge and self-discharge protection; with alarms.
 - 4. Battery self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.
- H. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: Thermal-magnetic circuit breaker, complying with UL 489 .
- 1. Integrated Equipment Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 22 kA.
- I. Inverter:

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

1. Description: Solid-state, high-frequency, PWM type, with the following operational features:
 - a. Automatically regulate output voltage to within plus or minus 3 percent, for all load ranges and for maximum 25 percent step-load changes; regulation may increase to 8 percent for 100 percent step-load changes.
 - b. Automatically regulate output frequency to within plus or minus 1 Hz, from no load to full load, at unity power factor, over the operating range of battery voltage.
 - c. Output Voltage Waveform: Sine wave with maximum 3 percent TDD throughout battery operating-voltage range, for 100 percent linear load.
 - d. Inverter Overload Capability: 115 percent for 10 minutes; 150 percent surge for 10 seconds.
 - e. Load Power Factor: 0.5 lead to 0.5 lag.
 - f. Brownout Protection: Produces rated power without draining batteries when input voltage is down to 75 percent of normal.

J. Rectifier/Battery Charger:

1. Description: Solid state, variable rate, temperature compensated; automatically maintains batteries in fully charged condition when normal power is available.
2. Maximum Battery Recharge Time from Fully Discharged State: 24 hours.
3. Low-voltage disconnect circuit reduces battery discharge during extended power outages, monitors battery voltage, and disconnects inverter when battery voltage drops to no less than 85.7 percent of nominal voltage.

K. Batteries:

1. Description: Standard VRLA batteries.
 - a. Capable of sustaining full-capacity output of inverter unit for minimum of 90 minutes .
2. Battery Disconnect and OCPD: Manufacturer's standard.

L. Maintenance Bypass Systems:

1. Maintenance Bypass Mode:
 - a. Internal; manual operation only; bypasses central battery equipment power circuits (inverter and static transfer switch); requires local operator selection at central battery equipment. Transfer and retransfer shall be make-before-break, without disrupting power to the load or causing system instabilities .
2. Bypass Overload Capability: 1.5 times the base load current.

M. Integral Output Disconnecting Means and OCPD:

1. Multiple-Output OCPDs: Thermal-magnetic circuit breakers, complying with UL 489; voltage rating matching unit output voltage rating; 20 A, single pole.

2.03 ENCLOSURES

A. Central Battery Equipment Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1 steel cabinets with access to components through hinged doors with flush tumbler lock and latch.
2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel finish over corrosion-resistant prime treatment .

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

2.04 OPTIONAL AND ACCESSORY FEATURES

- A. Factory-Installed Options and Accessories:
 - 1. Audible alarm with silencer switch.
 - 2. Remote Summary Alarm Panel: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate shall indicate five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions; silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.
 - a. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.
 - b. Maximum Distance from Main Unit: 1000 feet (304 m) .

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store central battery equipment according to NECA 411.
- B. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive central battery equipment, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, structural support, ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment will be installed, before installation begins.
- C. Examine equipment before installation. Reject equipment that is wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- D. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of central battery equipment with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install central battery equipment and accessories according to NECA 411.
- C. Wall-Mounted Central Battery Equipment: Install central battery equipment on walls with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches (2000 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For units not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- D. Floor-Mounted Central Battery Equipment: Install central battery equipment on 4-inch (100-mm) nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03.
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- F. Comply with NECA 1.
- G. Wiring Methods:
1. Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters.
 2. Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, counters, accessible ceiling spaces, and gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used.
 3. Install conductors and cables concealed in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
 4. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 5. Provide plenum-rated cable, where installed exposed or in open cable tray, within environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 6. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
 7. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- H. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.03 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
1. Separately Derived Systems: Make grounding connections to grounding electrodes and bonding connections to metallic piping systems as indicated; comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.04 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL WIRING

- A. Install wiring between central battery equipment and remote devices. Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify central battery equipment, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label central battery equipment with engraved nameplates.
 3. Label each separate cabinet, for multicabinet units.

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

- 4. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for central battery equipment, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of central battery equipment units.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Inspect and Test Each Component:
 - a. Inspect wiring, components, connections, and equipment installations. Test and adjust components and equipment.
 - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect central battery equipment, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust components and equipment.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 3. Verify that input voltages and frequencies at central battery equipment locations are within voltage and frequency limits specified in Part 2. If outside this range, notify Construction Manager before closing input OCPDs.
 - 4. Perform a load-duration test at rated voltage and rated output current to verify the correct functional operation of the unit under full-load stable operating conditions for the minimum time limits required by UL 924. Monitor and record ambient temperature and temperatures within the unit.
 - 5. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Central battery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies central battery equipment and describes all test results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

3.07 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. .

3.08 ADJUSTING

SECTION 263323.11 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING (continued):

- A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, and other adjustable parts.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous-trip elements; install fuses if not factory installed.
- D. Set the automatic system test parameters.

3.09 PROTECTION

- A. Replace central battery equipment whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain central battery equipment, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based control, monitoring, and display functions.

END OF SECTION 263323.11

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UPS systems.
2. Surge suppression.
3. Rectifier-charger.
4. Inverter.
5. Controls and indications.
6. Static bypass transfer switch.
7. Maintenance bypass/isolation switch.
8. Output distribution section.
9. Output isolation transformer.
10. Remote status and alarm panel.
11. Remote monitoring.
12. Battery.
13. Basic battery monitoring.
14. Additional battery monitoring.
15. Battery-cycle warranty monitoring.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GTO: Gate turn-off thyristor.
- C. IGBT: Isolated gate bipolar transistor.
- D. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
- G. PC: Personal computer.
- H. SPD: Surge protection device.
- I. THD: Total harmonic distortion.
- J. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of UPS.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for UPS.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each product, from manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For UPS units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Special Battery Warranties: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace UPS system storage batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranted Cycle Life for Valve-Regulated, Lead-Calcium Batteries: Equal to or greater than that represented in manufacturer's published table, but not less than the following, based on annual average battery temperature of 77 deg F (25 deg C):

Discharge Rate	Discharge Duration	Discharge End Voltage	Cycle Life
8 hours	8 hours	1.67	40 cycles
30 minutes	30 minutes	1.67	125 cycles
15 minutes	1.5 minutes	1.67	750 cycles

- B. Special UPS Warranties: Specified form in which manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within special warranty period.

- 1. Special Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Automatic operation includes the following:

- 1. Double Conversion, IGBT:
 - a. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output. High-efficiency carrier stored trench IGBT, in both rectifier-charger and inverter circuits, provides a minimum of 97 percent efficiency for the UPS system at full load and a minimum of 94 percent efficiency at 50 percent load.
 - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies energy to provide constant, regulated inverter power output to the load.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- c. Power Failure: If normal power fails, the rectifier-charger and inverter use energy from the battery to supply constant, regulated power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
 2. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls shall automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger shall supply power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharge the battery.
 3. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger shall charge the battery. The rectifier-charger shall automatically shift to float-charge mode on reaching full charge.
 4. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch shall switch the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
 5. The output power converters shall produce up to 300 percent of rated full-load current for short-circuit clearing. The inverter shall sustain steady-state overload conditions of up to 200 percent of rated full-load current for 60 seconds in normal operation.
 6. The inverter shall be capable of sustaining 150 percent of system capacity for 30 seconds while powered from the battery.
 7. Should overloads persist past the time limitations, the automatic static transfer switch shall switch the load to the bypass output of the UPS. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch shall return the load to the UPS system.
 8. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS shall supply power to the load from the normal supply with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.
- B. Manual operation includes the following:
1. Turning the inverter off causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load directly to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
 2. Turning the inverter on causes the static bypass transfer switch to transfer the load to the inverter.
- C. Maintenance Bypass/Isolation Switch Operation: Switch is interlocked so it cannot be operated unless the static bypass transfer switch is in the bypass mode. Device provides manual selection among the three conditions described below without interrupting supply to the load during switching:
1. Full Isolation: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. Normal UPS ac input circuit, static bypass transfer switch, and UPS load terminals are completely disconnected from external circuits.
 2. Maintenance Bypass: Load is supplied, bypassing the UPS. UPS ac supply terminals are energized to permit operational checking, but system load terminals are isolated from the load.
 3. Normal: Normal UPS ac supply terminals are energized and the load is supplied through the static bypass transfer switch and the UPS rectifier-charger and inverter, or the battery and the inverter.
- D. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance:
1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C).
 2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F (5 to 35 deg C).
 3. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent, noncondensing.
 4. Altitude: Sea level to 4000 feet (1220 m).

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled by an NRTL to comply with UL 1778.
- B. NFPA Compliance: UPS components shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL as suitable for installation in computer rooms according to NFPA 75.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- C. The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a maximum load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:
 - 1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
 - 2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 15 percent from nominal voltage.
 - 3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
 - 4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
 - 5. Load is 50 percent unbalanced continuously.
- D. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full-load UPS current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is 10 minutes.
- E. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10 percent and minus 15 percent from nominal voltage.
- F. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 98 percent at 100 percent load, 95 percent at 75 percent load, and 93 percent at 25 percent load.
- G. Maximum Acoustical Noise: 67 dBA, "A" weighting, emanating from any UPS component under any condition of normal operation, measured 39-inches from nearest surface of component enclosure.
- H. Maximum Energizing Inrush Current: Soft start linear input current rise to 100 percent over a 1- to 40-second period, factory set at 10 seconds.
- I. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Unbalanced: Maximum of plus or minus 2 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- J. AC Output-Voltage Regulation for Loads 100 Percent Balanced: Maximum of plus or minus 1 percent over the full range of battery voltage.
- K. Output Frequency: 60 Hz, plus or minus 0.1 percent over the full range of input voltage, load, and battery voltage.
- L. Limitation of harmonic distortion of input current to the UPS shall be as follows:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Rectifier-charger circuits shall limit THD to 5 percent, maximum, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30. Provide tuned harmonic filter if required to meet harmonic distortion limit.
 - b. THD is limited to a maximum of 32 percent, at rated full-load UPS current, for power sources with X/R ratio between 2 and 30.
- M. Maximum Harmonic Content of Output-Voltage Waveform: 5 percent rms total and 3 percent rms for any single harmonic, for 100 percent rated nonlinear load current, with a load crest factor of 3.0.
- N. Minimum Overload Capacity of UPS at Rated Voltage: 125 percent of rated full load for 10 minutes, 200 percent for 60 seconds in normal operation, and 150 percent for 30 seconds in battery operating mode.
- O. Maximum Output-Voltage Transient Excursions from Rated Value: For the following instantaneous load changes, stated as percentages of rated full UPS load, voltage shall remain within stated percentages of rated value and recover to, and remain within, plus or minus 2 percent of that value within 50 ms:
 - 1. 50 Percent: Plus or minus 3 percent.
 - 2. 100 Percent: Plus or minus 5 percent.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

3. Loss of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 4. Restoration of AC Input Power: Plus or minus 1 percent.
- P. Input Power Factor: A minimum of 0.95 lagging when supply voltage and current are at nominal rated values and the UPS is supplying rated full-load current without additional filters.
- Q. Output Power Factor Rating: Loads with power factor of 0.9 leading to 0.8 lagging shall not require derating of the UPS. For loads with power factors outside this range, derate the UPS output as follows:
1. Derate the UPS a maximum of 5 percent for 0.7 PF lagging.
 2. Derate the UPS a maximum of 10 percent for 0.6 PF lagging.
 3. Derate the UPS a maximum of 15 percent for 0.5 PF lagging.
 4. Derate the UPS a maximum of 20 percent for a range of 0.4 to 0.1 PF lagging.
- R. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC rules and regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

2.03 UPS SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Self-contained, battery backup device and accessories that provides three-phase electrical power in the event of failure or sag in the normal power system.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton Corporation; Powerware Division.
 2. Liebert Corporation; a division of Emerson.
 3. Schneider Electric; APC.
- C. Electronic Equipment: Solid-state devices using hermetically sealed, semiconductor elements. Devices include rectifier-charger, inverter, static bypass transfer switch, and system controls.
- D. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Configuration: Single-cabinet modular style units.
- F. Control Assemblies: Mount on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- G. Maintainability Features: Mount rectifier-charger and inverter sections and the static bypass transfer switch on modular plug-ins, readily accessible for maintenance.
- H. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- I. Capacity Upgrade Capability: Arrange wiring, controls, and modular component plug-in provisions to permit future 25 percent increase in UPS capacity.
- J. UPS Cabinet Ventilation: Redundant fans or blowers draw in ambient air near the bottom of cabinet and discharge it near the top rear.
- K. Output Circuit Neutral Bus, Conductor, and Terminal Ampacity: Rated phase current times a multiple of 1.73, minimum.

2.04 SURGE SUPPRESSION

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- A. Protect internal UPS components from surges that enter at each ac power input connection including main disconnect switch, static bypass transfer switch, and maintenance bypass/isolation switch. Protect rectifier-charger, inverter, controls, and output components.
 - 1. Use factory-installed surge suppressors tested according to IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category B.
 - 2. Additional Surge Protection: Protect internal UPS components from low-frequency, high-energy voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2. Design the circuits connecting with external power sources and select circuit elements, conductors, conventional surge suppressors, and rectifier components and controls so input assemblies will have adequate mechanical strength and thermal and current-carrying capacity to withstand stresses imposed by 400-Hz, 180 percent voltage surges described in IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2.

2.05 RECTIFIER-CHARGER

- A. Description: Voltage source converter, -pulse IGBT rectifier.
- B. Capacity: Adequate to supply the inverter during rated full output load conditions and simultaneously recharge the battery from fully discharged condition to 95 percent of full charge within 10 times the rated discharge time for duration of supply under battery power at full load.
- C. Output Ripple: Limited by output filtration to less than 0.5 percent of rated current, peak to peak.
- D. Control Circuits: Immune to frequency variations within rated frequency ranges of normal and emergency power sources.
 - 1. Response Time: Field adjustable for maximum compatibility with local generator-set power source.
- E. Battery Float-Charging Conditions: Comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current required for maximum battery life. The battery charger shall be matched to the battery type supplied.
- F. NiCd Battery Charger: Sense full charge by measuring the rate of temperature increase. Battery charging shall be terminated when the rate of temperature rise reaches 1.8 deg F (1 deg C) per minute. If the battery reaches 140 deg F (60 deg C) prior to reaching this rate of temperature rise, charging shall terminate. Chargers that determine full charge by voltage measurement to sense a 10-mV drop per cell when reaching full charge are also acceptable.

2.06 INVERTER

- A. Description:
 - 1. Pulse-width modulated, IGBT with sinusoidal output.
 - 2. Include a bypass phase synchronization window adjustment to optimize compatibility with local engine-generator-set power source.

2.07 CONTROLS AND INDICATIONS

- A. Description: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- B. Minimum displays, indicating devices, and controls include those in lists below. Provide sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and wiring required to support listed items. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.
- C. Indications: Plain-language messages on a digital LCD.
 - 1. Quantitative indications shall include the following:
 - a. Input voltage, each phase, line to line.
 - b. Input current, each phase, line to line.
 - c. Bypass input voltage, each phase, line to line.
 - d. Bypass input frequency.
 - e. System output voltage, each phase, line to line.
 - f. System output current, each phase.
 - g. System output frequency.
 - h. DC bus voltage.
 - i. Battery current and direction (charge/discharge).
 - j. Elapsed time discharging battery.
 - 2. Basic status condition indications shall include the following:
 - a. Normal operation.
 - b. Load-on bypass.
 - c. Load-on battery.
 - d. Inverter off.
 - e. Alarm condition.
 - 3. Alarm indications shall include the following:
 - a. Bypass ac input overvoltage or undervoltage.
 - b. Bypass ac input overfrequency or underfrequency.
 - c. Bypass ac input and inverter out of synchronization.
 - d. Bypass ac input wrong-phase rotation.
 - e. Bypass ac input single-phase condition.
 - f. Bypass ac input filter fuse blown.
 - g. Internal frequency standard in use.
 - h. Battery system alarm.
 - i. Control power failure.
 - j. Fan failure.
 - k. UPS overload.
 - l. Battery-charging control faulty.
 - m. Input overvoltage or undervoltage.
 - n. Input transformer overtemperature.
 - o. Input circuit breaker tripped.
 - p. Input wrong-phase rotation.
 - q. Input single-phase condition.
 - r. Approaching end of battery operation.
 - s. Battery undervoltage shutdown.
 - t. Maximum battery voltage.
 - u. Inverter fuse blown.
 - v. Inverter transformer overtemperature.
 - w. Inverter overtemperature.
 - x. Static bypass transfer switch overtemperature.
 - y. Inverter power supply fault.
 - z. Inverter transistors out of saturation.
 - aa. Identification of faulty inverter section/leg.
 - bb. Inverter output overvoltage or undervoltage.
 - cc. UPS overload shutdown.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- dd. Inverter current sensor fault.
- ee. Inverter output contactor open.
- ff. Inverter current limit.
- 4. Controls shall include the following:
 - a. Inverter on-off.
 - b. UPS start.
 - c. Battery test.
 - d. Alarm silence/reset.
 - e. Output-voltage adjustment.
- D. Dry-form "C" contacts shall be available for remote indication of the following conditions:
 - 1. UPS on battery.
 - 2. UPS on-line.
 - 3. UPS load-on bypass.
 - 4. UPS in alarm condition.
 - 5. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).
- E. Emergency Power off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts.

2.08 STATIC BYPASS TRANSFER SWITCH

- A. Description: Solid-state switching device providing uninterrupted transfer with a contactor or electrically operated circuit breaker to automatically provide electrical isolation for the switch.
- B. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at the rated full-load UPS current, minimum.
- C. Input SPD: 160 kA.

2.09 MAINTENANCE BYPASS/ISOLATION SWITCH

- A. Description: Manually operated switch or arrangement of switching devices with mechanically actuated contact mechanism arranged to route the flow of power to the load around the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch.
 - 1. Switch shall be electrically and mechanically interlocked to prevent interrupting power to the load when switching to bypass mode.
 - 2. Switch shall electrically isolate other UPS components to permit safe servicing.
 - 3. Switch shall electrically isolate the rectifier-charger, inverter, and static bypass transfer switch from the load, but shall allow primary power to the UPS for testing.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 2 and UL 891.
- C. Switch Rating: Continuous duty at rated full-load UPS current.
- D. Mounting Provisions: Separate wall- or floor-mounted unit.
- E. Key interlock with key that is released only when the rectifier-charger and inverter are bypassed by the static bypass transfer switch. Key shall be required to unlock maintenance bypass/isolation switch before switching from open (normal) position to closed position. Lock shall be designed specifically for mechanical and electrical component interlocking.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

2.10 OUTPUT ISOLATION TRANSFORMER

- A. Description: Unit with low forward transfer impedance up to 3 kHz, minimum. Include the following features:
1. Comply with applicable portions of UL 1561, including requirements for nonlinear load current-handling capability for a K-factor of approximately 4.
 2. Output Impedance at Fundamental Frequency: Between 3 and 4 percent.
 3. Regulation: 5 percent, maximum, at rated nonlinear load current.
 4. Full-Load Efficiency at Rated Nonlinear Load Current: 96 percent, minimum.
 5. Electrostatic Shielding of Windings: Independent for each winding.
 6. Coil Leads: Physically arranged for minimum interlead capacitance.
 7. Shield Grounding Terminal: Separately mounted; labeled "Shield Ground."
 8. Capacitive Coupling between Primary and Secondary: 33 pF, maximum, over a frequency range of 20 Hz to 1 MHz.

2.11 REMOTE STATUS AND ALARM PANEL

- A. Description: Labeled LEDs on panel faceplate indicating five basic status conditions. Audible signal indicates alarm conditions. Silencing switch in face of panel silences signal without altering visual indication.
1. Cabinet and Faceplate: Surface or flush mounted to suit mounting conditions indicated.

2.12 REMOTE MONITORING

- A. Description: Communication module in unit control panel provides capability for remote monitoring of status, parameters, and alarms specified in "Controls and Indications" Article. The remote computer and the connecting signal wiring are not included in this Section. Include the following features:
1. Connectors and network interface units for data transmission via RS-485, Ethernet, or web-based link.
 2. Software designed for control and monitoring of UPS functions and to provide on-screen explanations, interpretations, diagnosis, action guidance, and instructions for use of monitoring indications and development of meaningful reports. Permit storage and analysis of power-line transient records. Designs for Windows applications, software, and computer are not included in this Section.
 3. Software and Hardware: Compatible with that specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

2.13 BATTERY

- A. Description:
1. Valve-regulated, recombinant, lead-calcium units, factory assembled in an isolated compartment of UPS cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.
 - a. Arrange for drawout removal of battery assembly from cabinet for testing and inspecting.

2.14 BASIC BATTERY MONITORING

- A. Description: Continuous, real-time capture of battery performance data.
- B. Battery Ground-Fault Detector: Initiates alarm when resistance to ground of positive or negative bus of battery is less than 5000 ohms.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

- C. Battery compartment smoke/high-temperature detector initiates an alarm when smoke or a temperature greater than **167 deg F (75 deg C)** occurs within the compartment.
- D. Annunciation of Alarms: At UPS control panel and remotely.

2.15 ADDITIONAL BATTERY MONITORING

- A. Monitoring features and components shall include the following:
 - 1. Factory-wired sensing leads to cell and battery terminals and cell temperature sensors.
 - 2. Connections for data transmission via RS-485 link, external signal wiring to electrical power monitoring and control equipment. External signal wiring and computer are not specified in this Section.
 - 3. USB ports for printer and accessories.
 - 4. PC-based software designed to store and analyze battery data, compile reports on individual-cell parameters and total battery performance trends, and provide data for scheduling and prioritizing battery maintenance.

2.16 BATTERY-CYCLE WARRANTY MONITORING

- A. Description: Electronic device, acceptable to battery manufacturer as a basis for warranty action, for monitoring of charge-discharge cycle history of batteries covered by cycle-life warranties.
- B. Performance: Automatically measure and record each discharge event, classify it according to duration category and total discharges according to warranty criteria, and display remaining warranted battery life on front panel display.
- C. Additional monitoring functions and features shall include the following:
 - 1. Measuring and Recording: Total voltage at battery terminal. Initiate an alarm for excursions outside the proper float-voltage level.
 - 2. Monitoring: Ambient temperature at battery; initiate an alarm if temperature deviates from normally acceptable range.
 - 3. Keypad on Device Front Panel: Provide access to monitored data using front panel display.
 - 4. Alarm Contacts: Arrange to initiate remote alarm for abnormal battery voltage or temperature.
 - 5. Memory: Store recorded data in nonvolatile electronic memory.
 - 6. Ethernet Port: Permits downloading of data to a PC.

2.17 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test complete UPS system before shipment. Use the same type of batteries that are part of final installation. Include the following:
 - 1. Test and demonstration of all functions, controls, indicators, sensors, and protective devices.
 - 2. Full-load test.
 - 3. Transient-load response test.
 - 4. Overload test.
 - 5. Power failure test.
- B. Report test results. Include the following data:
 - 1. Description of input source and output loads used. Describe actions required to simulate source load variation and various operating conditions and malfunctions.
 - 2. List of indications, parameter values, and system responses considered satisfactory for each test action. Include tabulation of actual observations during test.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

3. List of instruments and equipment used in factory tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of the UPS.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Verify installation conditions are representative of the conditions used in the coordination studies for the electrical system. Provide fuse protection according to Section 262813 "Fuses" if required for coordination with UPS overcurrent protective device requirements.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 2. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Equipment Mounting: Install UPS on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch (450-mm)** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base **6 inches (150 mm)** from the outer edge of the base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- E. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and NFPA 70.
- F. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated. Apply oxide inhibitor on battery terminals.

3.03 GROUNDING

- A. Separately Derived Systems:
 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions that include grounding requirements in excess of NFPA 70 requirements for connecting to grounding electrodes and for bonding to metallic piping

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

near isolation transformer. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify each battery cell individually.

3.05 BATTERY EQUALIZATION

- A. Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual-cell voltages.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:
 - a. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - b. Component type and labeling verification.
 - c. Ratings of installed components.
 - 2. Test electrical and mechanical interlock systems for correct operation and sequencing.
 - 3. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one or more of the following methods:
 - a. Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or Table 100.12 of NETA ATS.
 - 4. Test static transfer from inverter to bypass and back. Use normal load, if possible.
 - 5. Test dc undervoltage trip level on inverter input breaker. Set according to manufacturer's published data.
 - 6. Verify synchronizing indicators for static switch and bypass switches.
 - 7. Test direct current system's batteries.
 - a. Verify adequacy of battery support racks, mounting, anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - b. Inspect spill containment installation. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.
 - c. Verify all charger functions and alarms.
 - d. Measure each cell voltage and total battery voltage with charger energized and in float mode of operation.
 - e. Perform a load test according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.
 - f. Measure charger float and equalizing voltage levels. Adjust to battery manufacturer's recommended settings.

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

g. Test values.

- 1) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- 2) Charger float and equalize voltage levels shall be according to battery manufacturer's published data.
- 3) The results of charger functions and alarms shall be according to manufacturer's published data.
- 4) Cell voltages shall be within 0.05 V of each other or according to manufacturer's published data.
- 5) Cell internal ohmic values (resistance, impedance, or conductance) shall not vary by more than 25 percent between identical cells that are in a fully charged state.
- 6) Results of load tests shall be according to manufacturer's published data or IEEE 450.

8. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.

C. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 **DEMONSTRATION**

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the UPS.

END OF SECTION 263353

SECTION 263353 - STATIC UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with [NFPA 99] [NFPA 110].
- D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

- F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 - 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.
- G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- J. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:
 - 1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.
 - 2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
 - 3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
 - 4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.
 - 5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
 - 6. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1008 for normal bus.
 - 7. Service Disconnecting Means: Externally operated, manual mechanically actuated.
- K. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles.
- L. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- M. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 - 4. Accessible via front access.
- N. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1 , complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
 - 2. Cummins Power Generation.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

3. [Eaton.](#)
 4. [Kohler Power Systems.](#)
 5. [Vertiv, Co. \(ASCO\).](#)
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
 8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- F. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- G. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
 8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

2.03 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:
 - a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
 - b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.
 - c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
 - d. Transition: Provide closed-transition operation when transferring from main transfer switch to bypass/isolation switch on the same power source.
 - e. Transition: Provide open-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
 - f. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
 - g. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
 - h. Automatic and Nonautomatic Control: Automatic transfer-switch controller shall also control the bypass/isolation switch.
 - i. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
 - j. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.
4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

B. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:
 - a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 - b. Switch position.
 - c. Switch in test mode.
 - d. Failure of communication link.
4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
 - a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
 - b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
 - c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
 3. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems." Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
 - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
 - 3. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - b. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - c. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - d. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - e. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

- 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
 4. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
 - B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
 - C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
 - D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.04 **DEMONSTRATION**
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
 - B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
 - 2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
 - 3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
 - 4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of roof adhesive for attaching the roof-mounted air terminal assemblies, approved by the roofing-material manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of Division 01 "Project Record Documents."
- B. Completion Certificate:
 - 1. UL Master Label Certificate.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: UL-listed installer, category OWAY.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES (continued):

- A. UL Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with UL 96A requirements for [**Class I**] [**Class II**] buildings.
- B. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as complying with UL 96, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Air Terminals:
 - 1. Copper or Aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. **1/2-inch (12.7-mm)** diameter by **18 inches (450 mm)** long.
 - 3. Pointed tip.
 - 4. Integral base support.
- B. Class I Main Conductors:
 - 1. Stranded Copper: 57,400 circular mils in diameter.
 - 2. Aluminum: 98,600 circular mils in diameter.
- C. Class II Main Conductors:
 - 1. Stranded Copper: 115,000 circular mils in diameter.
 - 2. Aluminum: 192,000 circular mils in diameter.
- D. Secondary Conductors:
 - 1. Stranded Copper: 26,240 circular mils in diameter.
 - 2. Aluminum: 41,400 circular mils in diameter.
- A. Ground Loop Conductor: Tinned copper.
- B. Ground Rods:
 - 1. Material: Copper-clad steel.
 - 2. Diameter: **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
 - 3. Rods shall be not less than **120 inches (3050 mm)** long.
 - 4. Sectional type, with integral threads.
- C. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A.
- B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and **8 inches (203 mm)** in radius and narrow loops.
- C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within **200 feet (60 m)** of building. Comply with requirements for concealed installations in UL 96A.

SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES (continued):

1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the roofing specifications and warranty.
 2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.
 3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.
- B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: bolted connectors.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

3.03 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 264113

SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Type 2 surge protective devices.
 - 2. Enclosures.
 - 3. Conductors and cables.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. I_n : Nominal discharge current.
- B. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): The maximum designated RMS value of the power frequency voltage that may be continuously applied to the mode of protection of an SPD.
- C. Metal-Oxide Varistor (MOV): An electronic component with a significant bidirectional, nonlinear current-voltage characteristic.
- D. Mode(s), Modes of Protection, or Protection Modes: Electrical paths where the SPD offers defense against transient overvoltages. Examples include: line to neutral (L-N), line to ground (L-G), line to line (L-L), and neutral to ground (N-G).
- E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- F. Type 1 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation between the secondary of the service transformer and the line side of the service disconnect overcurrent device.
- G. Type 2 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation on the load side of the service disconnect overcurrent device, including SPDs located at the branch panel.
- H. Type 3 SPDs: Point of utilization SPDs.
- I. Type 4 SPDs: Component SPDs, including discrete components, as well as assemblies.
- J. Type 5 SPDs: Discrete component surge suppressors, such as MOVs that may be mounted on a printed wiring board, connected by its leads or provided within an enclosure with mounting means and wiring terminations.
- K. Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): A rating selected from UL 1449 list of preferred values assigned to each mode of protection.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.
 - a. Include electrical characteristics, specialties, and accessories for SPDs.
 - b. Certification of compliance with UL 1449 by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction including the following information:

SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS (continued):

- 1) Tested values for VPRs.
- 2) I_n ratings.
- 3) MCOV, type designations.
- 4) OCPD requirements.
- 5) Manufacturer's model number.
- 6) System voltage.
- 7) Modes of protection.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty: Manufacturer warrants that SPDs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of SPDs that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.

1. Initial Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion, for labor, materials, and equipment.

B. The manufacturer shall provide unlimited free replacement of the entire SPD (not just modules, components or sub-assemblies) for all inoperable SPDs during the warranty period. Acceptable manufacturers listed that do not meet the warranty as standard shall submit a letter extending the warranty with the product submittal.

1. Manufacturer's Replacement Policy

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TYPE 2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ABB, Electrification Business.
2. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
3. Eaton.
4. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
5. Mersen USA.
6. SSI, an ILSCO Company.
7. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
8. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.

C. General Characteristics:

1. Reference Standards: UL 1449, Type 2; UL 1283.
2. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V and 120/240 V power systems, and not less than 115 percent of nominal system voltage for 480Y/277 V power systems.

SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS (continued):

3. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase must not be less than 160 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V or 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V or 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 - d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V or 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
5. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
6. I_n Rating: 20 kA.

D. Options:

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Include internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include NEMA ICS 5, dry Form C contacts rated at 2 A and 24 V(ac) for remote monitoring of protection status.
4. Include surge counter.

2.02 TYPE 3, TYPE 4, AND TYPE 5 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

- A. Type 3, Type 4, and Type 5 SPDs are not approved for field installation.

2.03 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Enclosures: Type 4X.

2.04 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide OCPD and disconnect for installation of SPD in accordance with UL 1449 and manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install leads between disconnects and SPDs short, straight, twisted, and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
1. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer.
 2. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length.

SECTION 264313 - SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS (continued):

- 3. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- C. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's installation requirements.

3.03 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests; reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

END OF SECTION 264313

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Materials.
2. Finishes.
3. Luminaire support.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.
- C. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

- 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

2.03 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.04 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members .
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:
 - a. Two **5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **10 feet (3 m)** in length .
 - b. Pendant mount with **5/32-inch- (4-mm-)** diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **10 feet (3 m)** in length .
 - c. Hook mount.
2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.
- B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.
- C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.
- D. Standard: See "Pole."

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.
 - 1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
 - 2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
 - 3. Anchor bolts.
 - 4. Manufactured pole foundations.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least **12 inches (300 mm)** above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- B. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- B. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- C. Live Load: Single load of **500 lbf (2200 N)** distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS (continued):

1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 150 mph (67 m/s).
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factor: 1.0.
- E. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.3 to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- F. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 STEEL POLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Cooper Lighting Solutions; Signify North America Corp.
 2. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 3. LSI Industries.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.
- C. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- D. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.
 1. Shape: Round, straight.
 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- E. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
 1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adaptor, then bolted together with galvanized-steel bolts.
 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.
- F. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- G. Fasteners: Galvanized steel, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.
- I. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS (continued):

- J. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- K. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Powder Coat: Comply with AAMA 2604.
 - a. Electrostatic-applied powder coating; single application and cured to a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils dry film thickness. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Corrosion Coating: Apply non-porous, automotive grade corrosion coating to exterior of powder coated pole.

2.03 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

2.04 MOUNTING HARDWARE

- A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, with a minimum yield strength of **55,000 psi** (380,000 kPa).
 - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
- B. Nuts: ASTM A 563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex
 - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
 - 2. Two nuts provided per anchor bolt, shipped with nuts pre-assembled to the anchor bolts.
- C. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1.
 - 1. Galvanizing: Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class C.
 - 2. One washers provided per anchor bolt.

2.05 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS (continued):

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.
- C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 POLE FOUNDATION

- A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123 M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Direct-Buried Foundations: Install to depth indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height. Add backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) to 9-inch (230-mm) layers, tamping each layer before adding the next. To ensure a plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.
- D. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied steel template, uniformly spaced.

3.03 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).
 - 3. Trees: 15 feet (5 m) from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
 - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS (continued):

3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Use a short piece of 1/2 -inch (13-mm) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
- F. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

3.04 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

END OF SECTION 265613

SECTION 265613 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and photoelectric relays to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- D. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.
- F. CRI of 80. CCT of 4100 K.
- G. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

- H. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- I. Internal driver.
- J. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use and in enclosed locations.
- K. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum Epoxy-coated steel or as indicated on drawings. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- G. Housings:
 - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
 - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.03 FINISHES

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.04 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, roofs, canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
- G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- H. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.05 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING (continued):

- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-)** thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):
 - a. IES LM-5.
 - b. IES LM-50.
 - c. IES LM-64.
 - d. IES LM-72.
 - 2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays.

END OF SECTION 265619

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 27 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for communication systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms .

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 - 2. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 - d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment – 2020
 - e. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - f. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2020
 - 3. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Accessibility Code
 - 4. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 - 5. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Electrical Systems
 - c. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - d. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 - 6. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual**

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

email addresses for H2Engineering personnel. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 9. Electrical Modifications:
 - a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Communications systems at the time of design.
 - b. If Communications equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including,

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.

- c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.

- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.

- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.

- D. Submittal Review Fees:

1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS (NOT REQUIRED)

- A. Should the Contractor elect to provide Coordination Drawings when not expressly required by the Engineer, such Drawings shall be considered for informational purposes only. The Engineer will not conduct a review of these Drawings, and their submission or any implied approval shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to fully comply with the requirements set forth in the Construction Documents. The Contractor remains solely responsible for ensuring that all work meets the contract specifications and standards, regardless of the content or status of the Coordination Drawings.

1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

1.18 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
 - 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 - 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 - 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 - 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
 - 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 - 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 - 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.08 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 27. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - 1. Metal conduit
 - 2. Plastic conduit
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

3.09 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests
 - 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 - 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.

SECTION 270100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

END OF SECTION 270100

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Selection and installation of communications busbars.
2. Selection and installation of communications bonding conductors.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. BBC: Backbone bonding conductor, for connecting multiple TBBs serving the same floor.
- B. PBB: Primary bonding busbar, located in main distribution frame room, ideally near electrical service entrance.
- C. RBB: Rack bonding busbar, located in equipment cabinets and racks.
- D. SBB: Secondary bonding busbar, located in intermediate distribution frame rooms.
- E. TBB: Telecommunications bonding backbone, for connecting SBBs to PBB.
- F. TBC: Telecommunications bonding conductor, for connecting PBB to intersystem bonding termination device or busbar at electrical service entrance.
- G. TEBC: Telecommunications equipment bonding conductor, for connecting RBBs to SBBs or PBB.
- H. UBC: Unit bonding conductor, for connecting individual communications equipment to RBBs or SBBs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of TBC connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of TBC only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 SELECTION OF COMMUNICATIONS BUSBARS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated in this Section or on Drawings, provide products specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

B. PBB:

1. Dimensions: 1/4 inch thick by 4 inch high (6.3 mm thick by 100 mm high).
2. Stand-Off Distance: 4 inch (100 mm).

C. SBB:

1. Dimensions: 1/4 inch thick by 4 inch high (6.3 mm thick by 100 mm high).
2. Stand-Off Distance: 4 inch (100 mm).

3.03 SELECTION OF COMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTORS

A. Unless otherwise indicated in this Section or on Drawings, provide products specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Communications Busbar Connections:

1. TBC: Not smaller than 3/0 AWG and no smaller than largest TBB.
2. TBB: Not smaller than 2 kcmil per linear ft of conductor length, but not larger than 750 kcmil, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. BBC: Not smaller than largest TBB to which it is connected unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
4. TEBC: Not smaller than 2 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted connectors.
5. UBC: Not smaller than 6 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted connectors.
6. Bonding Conductors to Structural Steel: Not smaller than 4 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted clamp connectors.

C. Cable Tray Connections:

1. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Conductor: 6 AWG.
2. Cable Tray Bonding Jumper: If not supplied by cable manufacturer, provide bonding jumper not smaller than 6 AWG and not longer than 12 inch (300 mm). If jumper is wire, it must be terminated with lug having one hole and standard barrel for one crimp. If jumper is flexible braid, it must be terminated with one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with bonding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.

D. Underground Connections: Not smaller than 2 AWG. Provide welded connectors, except bolted connectors may be used in handholes or manholes and as otherwise indicated on Drawings.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards:

1. Bonding of Communications: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with BICSI N3.
2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Techniques:

1. Busbars:

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers **12 inch (300 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
2. Conductors:
- a. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
 - b. Assemble wire connector to conductor, complying with manufacturer's published instructions and as follows:
 - 1) Use crimping tool and die specific to connector.
 - 2) Pre-twist conductor.
 - 3) Apply antioxidant compound to bolted and compression connections.
 - c. Install in straightest and shortest route between origination and termination point, and no longer than required. Bend radius must not be smaller than 10 times diameter of conductor. No single bend may exceed 90 degrees.
 - d. Install without splices.
 - e. Support conductors at not more than **36 inch (900 mm)** intervals.
 - f. Outside telecommunications rooms, install conductors in metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4) PVC-80 conduit until conduit enters telecommunications room. Install bonding conductors in EMT-A or EMT-SS when routed through plenum. Do not install bonding conductors in EMT-S unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 1) If bonding conductor must be installed in EMT-S or other ferrous metallic raceway, bond conductor to raceway using grounding bushing that complies with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of raceway to SBB.
3. Provide TBC and terminate ends to PBB and intersystem bonding busbar at electrical service entrance in accordance with Section 250.94, "Bonding for Communication Systems," of NFPA 70.
 4. Busbar Interconnections: Bond SBBs to PBB with TBBs. If more than one TBB is installed, bond TBBs together BBCs where required by TIA-607.
 5. Structural Steel: Where structural steel of steel frame building is readily accessible within room or space, bond each SBB and PBB to vertical steel of building frame.
 6. Communications Enclosures: Bond metallic enclosures of telecommunications equipment with UBCs to nearest SBB or PBB.
 7. Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to RBB using UBCs. Provide top-mounted RBB if not provided by enclosure or rack manufacturer. Bond RBB to SBB with TEBC. Power connection must comply with NFPA 70; equipment grounding conductor in power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment must be considered supplemental to bonding requirements in this Section.
 8. Shielded Cable: Bond shield of shielded cable to SBB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.
 9. Primary Protector: Bond to PBB with insulated bonding conductor.
 10. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where electrical panelboards for communications equipment are located in same room or space, bond each ground bar of panelboard to SBB.
 11. Cable Trays: Provide continuous electrical path by installing bonding clips and jumpers. Bond each end to nearest SBB.
 12. Ladder Racks: Provide continuous electrical path by installing bonding clips and jumpers. Bond each end to nearest SBB.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- B. Labels must be preprinted or computer-printed type.
 - 1. Label PBB(s) with "ts-PBB," where "ts" is telecommunications space identifier for location of PBB.
 - 2. Label SBB(s) with "ts-SBB," where "ts" is telecommunications space identifier for location of SBB.
 - 3. Label TBC, TBBs, and BBCs at attachment points with legend: "WARNING! COMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's published instructions.
 - 2. Test bonding connections of system using AC earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing PBB or SBB, using process recommended by BICSI N1. Conduct tests with facility in operation.
 - a. Measure resistance between PBB and electrical service intersystem termination point. Maximum acceptable value is 100 m Ω .
 - 1) If measured resistance from electrical service equipment to ground exceeds 5 Ω , notify Architect and include recommendations to reduce resistance to ground.
 - b. Measure resistance between SBBs and PBB. Maximum acceptable value is 100 m Ω .
 - 3. Test for ground loop currents using digital clamp-on ammeter, with full scale not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at accuracy of plus or minus 2.0 percent.
 - a. With grounding infrastructure completed and communications system electronics operating, measure current in bonding conductors connected to PBB and to SBBs. Maximum acceptable AC current level is 1 A.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Communications bonding will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- C. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect busbars and conductors from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Hooks.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
5. Polymer-concrete handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data for the following:
1. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 2. Underground handholes and boxes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Metal raceway of circular cross section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- E. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
- F. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

2.02 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Description: Nonmetallic raceway of circular section with manufacturer-fabricated fittings.
- B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.03 HOOKS

- A. Description: Prefabricated sheet metal cable supports for telecommunications cable.
- B. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- D. Galvanized steel.
- E. J shape.

2.04 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Description: Enclosures for communications.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-569-D.
 - 2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for use in wet locations.
 - 3. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
 - 4. Device Box Dimensions: 4 11/16 inches square by 3-1/4 inches deep (102 mm square by 83 mm deep).
 - 5. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- F. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

G. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 12 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.05 POLYMER-CONCRETE HANDHOLES

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate; bound together with polymer resin; and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
- B. General Requirements for Polymer Concrete Handholes:
 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
 3. Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 1. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 2. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "COMMUNICATIONS".
- E. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- F. Handholes **12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)** and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PATHWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
 4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel.
- B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Pathway locations include the following:
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 4. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 5. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
 6. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel units in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Pathway Size: 1 inch (25 mm).
- D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.
1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
- E. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
 3. TIA-569-D.
 4. NECA 101
 5. NECA 105.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling" for sleeves and sleeve seals for communications.
- F. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.
- G. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.
- H. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- I. Install no more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction. Utilize long radius ells for all optical-fiber cables.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- J. Conceal rigid conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within **12 inches (300 mm)** of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than **1-inch (27-mm)** trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum **10-foot (3-m)** intervals.
 - 2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings. Comply with requirements for expansion joints specified in this article.
 - 3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from nonmetallic conduit and fittings to GRC and fittings before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.
- P. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus one additional quarter-turn.
- Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure, to assure a continuous ground path.
- R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of **2-inch (50-mm)** trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.
- S. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than **200-lb (90-kg)** tensile strength. Leave at least **12 inches (300 mm)** of slack at each end of pull wire. Secure pull wire, so it cannot fall into conduit. Cap pathways designated as spare alongside pathways in use.
- T. Pathways for Optical-Fiber and Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
 - 1. **3/4-Inch (21-mm)** Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of **50 feet (15 m)**.
 - 2. **1-Inch (25-mm)** Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of **75 feet (23 m)**.
 - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- U. Install pathway-sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway-sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- V. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals, so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- W. Hooks:
1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity limits.
 2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or support rods.
 3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than **6 inches (150 mm)** of slack. The lowest point of the cables shall be no less than **6 inches (150 mm)** adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings, luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical and communications equipment.
 4. Space hooks no more than **4 feet (1.2 m)** o.c.
 5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.
- X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- AA. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- BB. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe of less than **6 inches (150 mm)** in nominal diameter.
 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within **12 inches (300 mm)** of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches (75 mm)** of concrete around conduit for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** on each side of the coupling.

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)** from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
- 5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.04 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch (12.5-mm)** sieve to **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures **1 inch (25 mm)** above finished grade.
- D. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- E. Field cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.05 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.06 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage or deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 270528

SECTION 270528 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems for communication raceways.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum **13/32-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter holes at a maximum of **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
 3. Channel Width: **1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm)**.
 4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel clamps, hangers, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored communications conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type [**zinc-coated steel**] [**stainless steel**] for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 2. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.

SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
4. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325** (**Grade A325M**).
5. Toggle Bolts: Stainless-steel springhead type.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.02 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA/BICSI 568.
 3. TIA-569-D.
 4. NECA 101.
 5. NECA 105.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 07 for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be **1/4 inch** (**6 mm**) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps, using spring friction action for retention in support channel.

3.02 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb** (**90 kg**).
- B. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
 5. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
 6. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 7. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- C. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.04 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of **2.0 mils (0.05 mm)**.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

END OF SECTION 270529

SECTION 270529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Ladder cable tray.
 2. Wire-mesh cable tray.
 3. Cable tray accessories.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable tray.
1. Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

- A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.
1. Source Limitations: Obtain cable trays and components from single manufacturer.
- B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.
- C. Structural Performance: See articles for individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:
1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.
 3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.02 LADDER CABLE TRAY

- A. Description:
1. Configuration: Two longitudinal side rails with transverse rungs swaged or welded to side rails, complying with NEMA VE 1.
 2. Width: 18 inches (450 mm) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
 4. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet (3.0 m), except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
 5. Rung Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) o.c.
 6. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) at center of tray's width.
 7. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch (22-mm) width with radius edges.
 8. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

9. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a **200-lb (90-kg)** concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
10. Fitting Minimum Radius: **24 inches (600 mm)**.
11. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1, Class 8A.
12. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
13. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

B. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Section and Fitting Side Rails and Rungs: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, SS, Grade 33.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 510/A 510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish: Epoxy-resin paint.
 - 1) Epoxy-Resin Prime Coat: Cold-curing epoxy primer, MPI# 101.
 - 2) Epoxy-Resin Topcoat: Epoxy, cold-cured gloss, MPI# 77.
 - 3) Hardware: Chromium-zinc plated, ASTM F 1136.

2.03 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

A. Description:

1. Configuration: Galvanized- steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
2. Width: **12 inches (300 mm)** unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
3. Minimum Usable Load Depth: **4 inches (100 mm)**.
4. Straight Section Lengths: **10 feet (3.0 m)**, except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
5. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a **200-lb (90-kg)** concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
6. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1, Class 8A.
7. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
8. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

B. Materials and Finishes:

1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Grade 33, Type 2.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 510/A 510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish: Electrogalvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM B 633.
 - 1) Hardware: Galvanized, ASTM B 633.

2.04 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable trays according to NEMA VE 2.
- B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.
- C. Install cable trays so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.
- D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- E. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure.
- F. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb (90 kg). Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
- G. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.
- H. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
- I. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
- J. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.
- K. Support wire-basket cable trays with trapeze hangers.
- L. Support trapeze hangers for wire-basket trays with 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter rods.
- M. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.
- N. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.
- O. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- P. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- Q. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- R. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- S. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.

3.02 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Cable trays shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.
- C. When using epoxy- or powder-coat painted cable trays as a grounding conductor, completely remove coating at all splice contact points or ground connector attachment. After completing splice-to-grounding bolt attachment, repair the coated surfaces with coating materials recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

3.03 CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.
- B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.
- C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches (450 mm).
- D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than 72 inches (1800 mm).
- E. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable trays.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.
- B. Connect pathways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.
 - 1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to safeguard exposed cables against falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials and shall remain in place until the risk of damage is over.
 - 2. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
 - 3. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 270536

SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round sleeves.
2. Rectangular sleeves.
3. Sleeve seal systems.
4. Grout.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ROUND SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:

1. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.

B. Molded Sleeves, PVC:

1. Description: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

A. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Rectangular:

1. Description:

- a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
- b. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than 50 inches (1270 mm) or with one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.03 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable or between pathway and cable.

SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless sleeve seal system is to be installed.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:

SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral waterstops. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Install sleeve during construction of floor or wall.
2. Install steel pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Grout sleeve into wall or floor opening.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
- B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
- C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
- D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 270544

SECTION 270544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 2. Signs.
 - 3. Bands and tubes.
 - 4. Cable ties.
 - 5. Miscellaneous identification products.
 - 6. Labels.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Identification Schedule:
 - 1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
 - 2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
 - 3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
 - 4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and TIA 606-B.
- B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.02 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.03 LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible labels with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating protective shields over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
2. Marker for Labels:
 - a. Permanent, waterproof black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - b. Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- B. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 1. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Ceiling Markers:
 - a. Letter Color: Black.
 - b. Background Color: Clear.
 - c. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 - d. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - e. Label Content: Include either the equipment tag identifier or a clear description of the concealed component, along with the system or service abbreviation. Label content shall match identifiers shown on Drawings or be descriptive enough for field recognition and maintenance access.
 - 1) System of Service Abbreviations: "COMM".
 - 2) Components: "J-BOX".

2.04 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground communications utility lines.
 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- B. Color and Printing:
 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, and ANSI Z535.4.
 2. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE".
- C. Description:
 1. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Overall Thickness: 8 mils (0.2 mm).
 4. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.0089 mm).
 5. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft. (16.6 kg/100 sq. m).
 6. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 300 lbf (1334 N) and 12,500 psi (86.1 MPa).

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

2.05 SIGNS

A. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, minimum **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick.
 - b. For signs larger than **20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm)**, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with white letters on a dark gray background.
 - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** grommets in corners for mounting.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.06 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **12,000 psi (82.7 MPa)**.
3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C)**.
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.
2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F (23 deg C)** according to ASTM D638: **7000 psi (48.2 MPa)**.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: **Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C)**.
5. Color: Black.

2.07 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying communications identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.
- G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- H. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Provide label **6 inches (150 mm)** from cable end.
- I. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- J. Ceiling Marker Labels:
 - 1. Apply labels for each concealed major item of communication equipment or component requiring service or maintenance.
 - 2. Align labels neatly, parallel to ceiling edges or panel orientation.
 - 3. Apply after ceiling installation and verification of concealed item locations.
 - 4. Do not install labels on surfaces subject to frequent replacement or repainting without coordination.
 - 5. Locate ceiling marker labels where accessible and visible.
 - 6. Application Locations:
 - a. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings (ACT):
 - 1) Apply label to the face of the ceiling grid tee directly adjacent to or centered over the concealed item.
 - 2) If grid location is not feasible, affix to accessible tile surface, avoiding any tile likely to be replaced or removed.

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

- b. Gypsum Board or Hard-Lid Ceilings with Access Panels:
 - 1) Apply label directly to the surface of the access panel.
 - 2) Label shall be centered, upright, and clearly legible from floor level.
 - c. Exposed Ceilings or Open Structures:
 - 1) Apply label to the nearest permanent building surface or equipment mounting plate visible from below.
 - 2) If no surface is available, affix to suspended tag or placard mounted below the item.
 - d. Multiple Components at Single Access Location:
 - 1) Use a single label listing all concealed components above the ceiling at that location, aligned vertically or in column format.
 - 2) Use consistent labeling format and spacing.
- K. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
- 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
 - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- L. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:
- 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.
 - 1. System legends shall be as follows:
 - a. Telecommunications.
- D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress, composed of the following, in the order listed:
 - 1. Telecommunications room designation.
 - 2. Period.
 - 3. Rack designation.
 - 4. Period.
 - 5. Patch panel rack U position.

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

6. Period.
 7. Patch panel port number.
- E. Equipment Room Labeling:
1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic signs containing equipment designation.
 - a. Telecommunications room designation.
 - b. Period.
 - c. Rack or cabinet designation.
 2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows and outlets, starting at to left and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
 3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:
 - a. Patch panel rack U position.
 - b. Period.
 - c. Patch panel port number.
- F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a self-adhesive wraparound label indicating the first and second location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Both terminations terminated should be labeled identically.
1. Telecommunications room designation (first location).
 2. Period.
 3. Rack designation.
 4. Period.
 5. Patch panel rack U position.
 6. Period.
 7. Patch panel port number.
 8. Slash.
 9. Telecommunications room designation (second location).
 10. Period.
 11. Rack designation.
 12. Period.
 13. Patch panel rack U position.
 14. Period.
 15. Patch panel port number.
- G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a self-adhesive wraparound label indicating the following, in the order listed:
1. Telecommunications room designation.
 2. Period.
 3. Rack designation.
 4. Period.
 5. Patch panel rack U position.
 6. Period.
 7. Patch panel port number.
- H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for copper, coaxial, hybrid copper/fiber, and optical-fiber cable.
- I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Self-adhesive labels.

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
- K. Equipment Identification Labels:
 1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Communications cabinets.
 - b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
 - c. Computer room air conditioners.
 - d. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION 270553

SECTION 270553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- D. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- E. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- F. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as Technician to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS (continued):

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.02 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm).
- B. Backboard Paint: Light-colored fire-retardant paint.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for underground pathways.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" for installation of equipment in communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in tracks and in room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
 - 1. Meet jointly with systems providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 - 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
 - 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.
- G. Backboards:
 - 1. Install from 6 inches (150 mm) to 8 feet, 6 inches (2588 mm) above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
 - 2. Paint all sides of backboard with two coats of paint, leaving fire rating stamp visible.

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS (continued):

3. Comply with requirements for backboard installation in BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D.

3.03 **SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS**

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.04 **FIRESTOPPING**

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI's "Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual," "Firestopping Practices" Ch.

END OF SECTION 271100

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. 19-inch equipment racks.
 - 2. 19-inch freestanding equipment cabinets.
 - 3. Grounding.
 - 4. Labeling.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Access Provider: An operator that provides a circuit path or facility between the service provider and user. An access provider can also be a service provider.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. LAN: Local area network.
- D. RCDD: Registered communications distribution designer.
- E. Service Provider: The operator of a telecommunications transmission service delivered through access provider facilities.
- F. TGB: Telecommunications grounding bus bar.
- G. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding bus bar.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, certifications, standards compliance, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under direct supervision of RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as Technician to perform on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES (continued):

- A. UL listed.
- B. RoHS compliant.

2.02 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

- A. Description: Two- and four- post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, **19-inch (482.6-mm)** equipment mounting with an opening of **17.72-inches (450-mm)** between rails.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. **Chatsworth.**
 - 2. **Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.**
 - 3. **Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.**
 - 4. **Panduit Corp.**
- C. General Requirements:
 - 1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
 - 2. Material: Extruded steel.
 - 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Floor-Mounted Racks:
 - 1. Overall Height: **84 inches (2133.6 mm).**
 - 2. Overall Depth: **29 inches (736.6 mm).**
 - 3. Upright Depth: **3 inches (76.2 mm).**
 - 4. Two-Post Load Rating: **1000 lb (454 kg).**
 - 5. Four-Post Load Rating: **2000 lb (907 kg).**
 - 6. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45.
 - a. Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.
 - 7. Threads: 12-24.
 - 8. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug.
 - 9. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
 - 10. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
 - 11. Self-leveling.
- E. Wall-Mounted Racks:
 - 1. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Depth: **23 inches (584.2 mm).**
 - 3. Load Rating: **150 lb (65 kg).**
 - 4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 5. Threads: 12-24.
 - 6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
 - 7. Equipment Access: Integral swing.
- F. Cable Management:
 - 1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
 - 2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
 - 3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES (continued):

4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.03 19-INCH EQUIPMENT CABINETS

- A. Description: Manufacturer-assembled four-post frame enclosed by side and top panels and front and rear doors, designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with EIA/ECIA 310-E, **19-inch (482.6-mm)** equipment mounting with an opening of **17.72 inches (450 mm)** between rails.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. **Chatsworth Products, Inc.**
 2. **Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.**
 3. **Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.**
 4. **Panduit Corp.**
- C. General Cabinet Requirements:
 1. Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
 2. Material: Extruded aluminum.
 3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
 4. Color: Black.
- D. Modular Freestanding Cabinets:
 1. Overall Height: **84 inches (2133.6 mm)**.
 2. Overall Depth: **245.3 inches (1150mm)**.
 3. Load Rating: **3000 lb (1362 kg)**.
 4. Number of Rack Units: 45.
 - a. Numbering: Every rack units, on interior of rack.
 5. Threads: Universal square.
 6. Removable and lockable side and top panels.
 7. Hinged and lockable front and rear doors.
 8. Adjustable feet for leveling.
 9. Screened ventilation openings in roof and rear door.
 10. Cable access provisions in roof and base.
 11. TGB.
 12. Air dam.
 13. Bottom panel.
 14. Ring cable manager.
 15. Full height dual PDU bracket.
 16. All cabinets keyed alike.
- E. Cable Management:
 1. Ring cable manager.
 2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
 3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.

2.04 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES (continued):

- B. Rack and Cabinet TGBs: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with TIA-606-B. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 - 1. Cabinet-Mounted TGB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to cabinet.
 - 2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal TGB: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (482.6- or 584.2-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
 - 3. Rack-Mounted Vertical TGB: 72 or 36 inches (1828.8 or 914.4 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to rack.

2.05 LABELING

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout of communications equipment spaces.
- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM for installation of communications equipment spaces.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment in racks and room. Coordinate service entrance configuration with service provider.
 - 1. Meet jointly with system providers, equipment suppliers, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment configurations and installation interfaces.
 - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 - 3. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment spaces to accommodate and optimize configuration and space requirements of telecommunications equipment.
 - 4. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.02 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with NECA/BICSI 607.
- B. Install grounding according to BICSI ITSIMM, "Bonding, Grounding (Earthing) and Electrical Protection" Ch.

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES (continued):

- C. Locate TGB to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least 2 inches (50 mm) of clearance behind TGB. Connect TGB with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from TGB to suitable electrical building ground. Connect rack TGB to near TGB or the TMGB.
 - 1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to patch panel, and bond patch panel to TGB or TMGB.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Coordinate system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements in Section 270553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 09 for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.
- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 3 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- D. Labels shall be machine printed. Type shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in height.

END OF SECTION 271116

SECTION 271116 - COMMUNICATIONS RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Type OFNP optical fiber cable.
 - 2. Optical fiber cable hardware.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- B. Type OFNP: Nonconductive cable for use in plenums, ducts, and other spaces used for environmental air.
- C. Type OFNR: Nonconductive cable for use as riser in vertical shafts or from floor to floor.
- D. Types OFN and OFNG: Nonconductive cable for general purpose use.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Type OFNP optical fiber cable.
 - 2. Types OFN and OFNG optical fiber cable.
 - 3. Optical fiber cable hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. System Labeling Schedules:
 - a. Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 - 2. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
 - 3. Wiring diagrams showing typical schematic arrangement, including the following:
 - a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
 - b. Telecommunications pathways.
 - c. Telecommunications system access points.
 - d. Telecommunications grounding system.
 - e. Cross-connects.
 - f. Patch panels.
 - g. Patch cords.
 - 4. Cross-Connect and Patch-Panel Drawings: Detail mounting assemblies and show elevations and physical relationship between installed components.
- C. Field Quality-Control Reports: Optical fiber cable testing plan.

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.
- B. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
 - 1. Test optical fiber cable to determine continuity of strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TYPE OFNP OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

- A. Type OFNP Optical Fiber Cable: This category covers jacketed optical fiber cable for use in vertical runs in plenums, ducts, or other spaces used for environmental air within buildings in accordance with Article 770 of NFPA 70 containing no electrically conductive materials.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QAYK; including UL 1651.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Performance: TIA-568.3.
 - b. Inside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-83-596.
 - c. Jacket:
 - 1) Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color in accordance with TIA-598.
 - 2) Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inch (1 m).
- C. Type OFNP, Designation OS2, Inside Plant, Single-Mode Optical Fiber Cable:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Additional Characteristics:
 - a. Construction: TIA-492CAAA; 9 μ m core diameter, 250 μ m cladding diameter.
 - b. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-Length Product: 500 MHz-km at 850 nm wavelength; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm wavelength.
 - 3. Options:
 - a. Configuration:
 - 1) 12-fiber and less: Tight buffered, non-unitized optical fiber cable.
 - 2) 24-fiber and greater: Tight buffered, unitized optical fiber cable.
 - b. Maximum Attenuation: 0.5 dB/km at 1310 nm wavelength; 0.5 dB/km] at 1550 nm wavelength.
 - c. Jacket Color: Yellow.

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

2.02 TYPES OFN AND OFNG OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

- A. Types OFN and OFNG Optical Fiber Cable: This category covers jacketed optical fiber cable for general use within buildings in accordance with Article 770 of NFPA 70 containing no electrically conductive materials.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QAYK; including UL 1651.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Performance: TIA-568.3.
 - b. Inside-Outside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-87-640.
 - c. Jacket:
 - 1) Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color in accordance with TIA-598.
 - 2) Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inch (1 m).
- C. Types OFN and OFNG, Designation OS2, Outside Plant, Single-Mode Optical Fiber Cable:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Additional Characteristics:
 - a. Construction: TIA-492CAAB; 9 µm core diameter, 250 µm cladding diameter, gel-filled with low water peak.
 - b. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-Length Product: 500 MHz-km at 850 nm wavelength; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm wavelength.
 - 3. Options:
 - a. Configuration:
 - 1) 6 or 12-fiber, single loose tube, optical fiber cable.
 - 2) 24-fiber or greater, stranded loose tube, optical fiber cable.
 - b. Maximum Attenuation: 0.4 dB/km at 1310 nm wavelength; 0.3 dB/km at 1550 nm wavelength.
 - c. Jacket Color: Black.

2.03 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Fiber Optic Connector Intermateability Standard (FOCIS) specifications of TIA-604 series.
 - 2. TIA-568.3.
- B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
 - 1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- C. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36 inch (900 mm) lengths.

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

- D. Connector Type: Type LC complying with TIA-604-10, connectors.
- E. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of single optical fiber cable.
 - 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
 - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- F. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 - 1. Female; quick-connect, simplex and duplex; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of single optical fiber cable.
 - 2. Insertion loss not more than 0.25 dB.
 - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
 - 4. Designed to snap-in to patch panel or faceplate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate backbone cabling with protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.02 SELECTION OF OPTICAL FIBER TYPE

- A. Installed in Plenum, Duct, or Other Space Handling Environmental Air:
 - 1. Nonconductive: Type OFNP in metallic conduit.
- B. Installed in Location Other Than Riser or Plenum:
 - 1. Nonconductive: Type OFNP in metallic conduit.
- C. Installed in Below Grade Duct:
 - 1. Nonconductive: Type OFNG in non-metallic conduit.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLES

- A. Optical fiber backbone cabling system must provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.
- B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters may not be used as part of backbone cabling.
- C. Comply with BICSI N1, NECA NEIS 1, and NECA NEIS 301.
- D. Backbone cabling system must comply with transmission standards in TIA-568.1.
- E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569.

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

F. Wiring Methods:

1. In Raceway: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - a. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - b. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
2. In Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

G. Optical Fiber Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.3.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all cables; no cable may contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inch (760 mm) and not more than 6 inch (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
6. Bundle, lace, and train cable to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
7. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
8. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps may not be used for heating.
9. In communications equipment room, provide 10 ft (3 m) long service loop on each end of cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.

H. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable may not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

I. Installation of Cable Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Coil cable 6 ft (1.8 m) long not less than 12 inch (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.

J. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

3.04 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- B. Comply with TIA-569, Annex A, "Firestopping."

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

- C. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding in accordance with BICSI ITSIMM, "Grounding (Earthing), Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with TIA-607 and NECA/BICSI-607.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least **2 inch (50 mm)** clearance behind grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with minimum 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to grounding bus bar, using not smaller than 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Administration Class: Class 2 .
 - 2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification must comply with TIA-606 for Class 2 level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.
- D. Cable Schedule: Install in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- E. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- F. Cable and Wire Identification:
 - 1. Label each cable within **4 inch (100 mm)** of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding **15 ft (4.5 m)**.
 - 4. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- G. Labels must be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA 606, for the following:

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

1. Flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect optical fiber jacket materials for qualified electrical testing laboratory certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
 - a. Test instruments must meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 - b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
 - 1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction in accordance with TIA-526-14, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
 - 2) Attenuation test results for backbone links must be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results must be less than those calculated in accordance with equation in TIA-568.1.

C. Nonconforming Work:

1. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective cables and retest.

D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

1. Data for each measurement must be documented.
2. Data for field quality-control report submittals must be printed in summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from instrument to computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

END OF SECTION 271323

SECTION 271323 - COMMUNICATIONS OPTICAL FIBER BACKBONE CABLING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Category 6 twisted pair cable.
2. Category 6a twisted pair cable.
3. Twisted pair cable hardware, including plugs and jacks.
4. Cabling identification products.
5. Grounding provisions for twisted pair cable.
6. Source quality control requirements for twisted pair cable.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- C. FTP: Shielded twisted pair.
- D. F/FTP: Overall foil screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- E. F/UTP: Overall foil screened cable with unscreened twisted pair.
- F. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. Jack: Also commonly called an "outlet," it is the fixed, female connector.
- I. Plug: Also commonly called a "connector," it is the removable, male telecommunications connector.
- J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- K. Screen: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.
- L. Shield: A metallic layer, either a foil or braid, placed around a pair or group of conductors.
- M. S/FTP: Overall braid screened cable with foil screened twisted pair.
- N. S/UTP: Overall braid screened cable with unscreened twisted pairs.
- O. UTP: Unscreened (unshielded) twisted pair.

1.03 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connections, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
 2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
 3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
- B. A work area is approximately **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)**, and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.
- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is **295 feet (90 m)**. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of **16 feet (4.9 m)** to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.
1. System Labeling Schedules:
 - a. Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 2. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
 3. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment, including the following:
 - a. Telecommunications rooms plans and elevations.
 - b. Telecommunications pathways.
 - c. Telecommunications system access points.
 - d. Telecommunications grounding system.
 - e. Telecommunications conductor drop locations.
 - f. Typical telecommunications details.
 - g. Mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems.
- C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
1. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, cabling administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.09 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.

C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.02 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:

1. Communications, Plenum Rated:

a. Type CMP complying with UL 1685.

2. Communications, Non-Plenum Rated:

a. Type CMR complying with UL 1666.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.

2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

- C. RoHS compliant.

2.03 CATEGORY 6 TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.
 - 2. Berk-Tek, a Leviton Company.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
 - 4. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
- C. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: As indicated on plans.
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Thermoplastic.

2.04 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, with internal spline, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.
 - 2. Berk-Tek, a Leviton Company.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
 - 4. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: As indicated on plans.
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Thermoplastic.

2.05 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

2. [Berk-Tek, a Leviton Company.](#)
 3. [CommScope, Inc.](#)
 4. [Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.](#)
- C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6 or Category 6a.
 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as twisted pair cable, from single source.
- E. Connecting Blocks:
1. 110-style IDC for Category 6.
 2. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
 3. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- G. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- H. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- I. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or cover plate.
 3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Cover Plate:

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

1. Four port, vertical single gang cover plates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
2. Metal Cover Plate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and co-axial work area cords.

- a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

K. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.06 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA-606-B and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.07 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA-568-C.1.
- C. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 WIRING METHODS

- A. Routing:
 1. Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, attics, and gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.
 - a. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - b. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
 2. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

- A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 271100 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."
- B. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- C. Comply with Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
- D. Comply with Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."
- E. Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED-PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.0, TIA-568-C.1, and TIA-568-C.2.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI's "Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM), Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
 - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 - 5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 6. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
 - 7. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to equipment outlets:
 - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
 - b. Locate consolidation points for twisted-pair cables at least **49 feet (15 m)** from communications equipment room.
 - 8. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 9. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 - 10. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 11. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
 - 12. In the communications equipment room, install a **10-foot- (3-m-)** long service loop on each end of cable.
 - 13. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Open-Cable Installation:
 - 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 - 2. Suspend twisted pair cabling, not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **48 inches (1219 mm)** apart.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:

1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
3. Coil cable **6 feet (1800 mm)** long not less than **12 inches (300 mm)** in diameter below each feed point.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **24 inches (600 mm)**.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)**.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)**.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways, power lines, and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of **3 inches (76 mm)**.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of **5 inches (127 mm)**.

3.04 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

3.05 GROUNDING

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."
- C. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.
- D. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a **2-inch (50-mm)** clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.
- E. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."
 - 1. Administration Class: Class 3.
 - 2. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 3 level of administration, including optional identification requirements of this standard.
- C. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- E. Cable and Wire Identification:
 - 1. Label each cable within **4 inches (100 mm)** of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 - 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding **15 feet (4.5 m)**.
 - 4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 - 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING (continued):

- F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

- B. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.

- C. Nonconforming Work:

1. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

- D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

- E. Manufacturer Services:

1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to support field tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 271513

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 28 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for electronic safety and security systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms .

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 - 2. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 - d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment – 2020
 - e. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - f. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2020
 - 3. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Accessibility Code
 - 4. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 - 5. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-32 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Fire Protection Systems
 - c. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Electrical Systems
 - d. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - e. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 - 6. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual**

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

email addresses for H2Engineering personnel. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 9. Electrical Modifications:
 - a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Electronic Safety and Security systems at the time of design.
 - b. If Electronic Safety and Security systems equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.

- c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.
- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- D. Submittal Review Fees:
 1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS (NOT REQUIRED)

- A. Should the Contractor elect to provide Coordination Drawings when not expressly required by the Engineer, such Drawings shall be considered for informational purposes only. The Engineer will not conduct a review of these Drawings, and their submission or any implied approval shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to fully comply with the requirements set forth in the Construction Documents. The Contractor remains solely responsible for ensuring that all work meets the contract specifications and standards, regardless of the content or status of the Coordination Drawings.

1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:
1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
 2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
 3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected in Division 01 "Product Requirements".

1.18 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

3.04 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

3.05 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of **96 inches (2440 mm)** in occupied spaces and **90 inches (2300 mm)** in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
 - 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 - 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 - 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 - 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
 - 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 - 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.06 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 - 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.08 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 28. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - 1. Metal conduit
 - 2. Plastic conduit
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

3.09 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests
 - 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.
 - 2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.

SECTION 280100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

END OF SECTION 280100

SECTION 280523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Balanced twisted pair cable hardware.
 - 3. Control cable.
 - 4. Control-circuit conductors.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inch (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

2.02 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- C. Conductors: 100 ohm, No. 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: Shielded twisted pairs (FTP). Cable Rating: Plenum.
- E. Jacket: Yellow thermoplastic.

2.03 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

SECTION 280523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables must be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100 ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 - 3.

2.04 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.05 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- D. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 - 1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.
 - 2. Critical operations power system (COPS).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.

SECTION 280523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

1. Outlet boxes for cables must be no smaller than **4 inch (102 mm)** square by **2-1/8 inch (53 mm)** deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within **1/8 inch (3.1 mm)** of the finished wall surface.
 2. Flexible metal conduit must not be used.
- B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- C. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 3. Extend conduits **3 inch (75 mm)** above finished floor.
 4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
1. Terminate all conductors; cable must not contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 2. Cables may not be spliced and must be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 3. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 4. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inch (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inch (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 6. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 7. Ground wire must be copper, and grounding methods must comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 2. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
1. Install wiring in raceways.
 2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
 3. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26.
 4. Open-Cable Installation:
 - a. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

SECTION 280523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY (continued):

- b. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inch (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inch (760 mm) apart.
- c. Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
- d. Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
- e. Cable must not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

3.03 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

- 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
- 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
- 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.04 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.**

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. For control-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26.**

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.**

END OF SECTION 280523

SECTION 280544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round sleeves.
2. Rectangular sleeves.
3. Sleeve seal systems.
4. Grout.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ROUND SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:

1. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.

B. Molded Sleeves, PVC:

1. Description: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

A. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Rectangular:

1. Description:
 - a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than 50 inches (1270 mm) or with one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.03 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable or between pathway and cable.

SECTION 280544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless sleeve seal system is to be installed.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:

SECTION 280544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral waterstops. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Install sleeve during construction of floor or wall.
2. Install steel pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Grout sleeve into wall or floor opening.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
- B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
- C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
- D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 280544

SECTION 280544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY PATHWAYS AND CABLING (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. One or more security access networked workstations.
2. Security access operating system and application software.
3. Security access controllers connected to high-speed electronic-data transmission network.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.
- B. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.
- C. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- D. Location: A Location on the TCP/IP network having a network controller-to-node controller communications link. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- E. Network Controller: Top tier of network-enabled architecture connected by a TCP/IP network and manageable from any network-connected PC with a browser.
- F. Node Controller: Field-installed controller at each Location connected to the system's inputs, outputs, and readers that manages access control decisions with data provided by the Network Controller.
- G. RAS: Remote access services.
- H. RF: Radio frequency.
- I. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.
- J. SMS: Security Management System.
- K. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- L. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.
- M. VMS: Video Management System.
- N. WMP: Windows media player.
- O. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.
- P. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Patch cords.
 - b. Patch panels.
 - 3. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
 - 4. Battery and charger calculations for controllers.
- C. Product Schedules.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on USB media of the hard-copy submittal.
 - 2. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Laser Printers: Three toner cassettes and one replacement drum unit.
 - 2. Credential card blanks, ready for printing. Include enough credential cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
 - 3. Sticker tags. Include enough sticker tags for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
 - 4. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Integrator Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 1. The security system integrator shall have been regularly engaged in the installation and maintenance of integrated access control systems and have a proven track record with similar systems of the same size, scope, and complexity.
 2. The security system integrator shall supply information attesting to the fact that their firm is an authorized product integrator certified with the SMS. A minimum of one technician shall be a Certified SMS installer.
 3. The security system integrator shall supply information attesting to the fact that their installation and service technicians are competent factory trained and certified personnel capable of maintaining the system and providing reasonable service time.
 4. The security system integrator shall provide a minimum of three (3) references whose systems are of similar complexity and have been installed and maintained by the security system integrator in the last five (5) years.
 5. There shall be a local representative and factory authorized local service organization that shall carry a complete stock of parts and provide maintenance for these systems.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain network controllers, node controllers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.
- D. Installation shall comply with federal, state, and local codes and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- E. All software and hardware shall be programmed and installed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.
- F. All equipment shall be new, in current production, and the standard products of a manufacturer of ESS equipment.
- G. The manufacturer shall guarantee availability of parts, for a minimum of seven (7) years from date of shipment.
- H. On-site maintenance and repair service shall be available locally and within four (4) hours of notification of condition.
- I. Software integration between all integrated systems shall be tested and certified for interoperability by the manufacturer of each system.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Controllers:
 1. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F (10 and 30 deg C), and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 2. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
 3. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
 4. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 30 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 3. Indoor, Uncontrolled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosures. System components installed in non-temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 4. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4 enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h).
 5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
 6. Corrosive Environment: For system components subjected to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones, provide NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide S2; Netbox Enterprise or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Continental Access; CA4K.
 2. Honeywell Commercial Security; Pro-Watch or WIN-PAK.
 3. Kantech; EntraPass.
 4. Software House; CCure9000.

2.02 DESCRIPTION

- A. Security Access System: Network-enabled architecture with multiple tiered, modular hardware hierarchy consisting of network controllers and field-installed node controllers, connected by a TCP/IP network and manageable from any network-connected PC with a browser.
- B. System Software: Software shall have the following capabilities:
1. Multiuser and multitasking to allow for independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
 2. Graphical user interface to show pull-down menus and a menu-tree format that complies with interface guidelines of the operating system.
 3. System license for the entire system including capability for future additions that are within the indicated system size limits specified in this Section.
 4. Open-architecture system that allows importing and exporting of data and interfacing with other systems that are compatible with operating system.
 5. Password-protected operator login and access.
 6. Open-database-connectivity compliant.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

2.03 OPERATION

- A. Security access system shall use a single database for access-control and credential-creation functions.
- B. Distributed Processing: A fully distributed processing system.
 - 1. Access-control information, including time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data, shall be downloaded to controllers so each controller can make access-control decisions.
 - 2. Intermediate controllers for access control are prohibited.
 - 3. In the event that communications with the central controller are lost, controllers shall automatically buffer event transactions until communications are restored, at which time buffered events shall be uploaded to the central station.
- C. Data Capacity:
 - 1. 64 different card-reader formats.
 - 2. 48 graphic file types for importing maps.
- D. Location Capacity:
 - 1. 1024 reader-controlled doors.
 - 2. Unlimited total-access credentials.
 - 3. 2048 supervised alarm inputs.
 - 4. 2048 programmable outputs.
- E. System Network Requirements:
 - 1. System components shall be interconnected and shall provide automatic communication of status changes, commands, field-initiated interrupts, and other communications required for proper system operation.
 - 2. Communication shall not require operator initiation or response and shall return to normal after partial- or total-network interruption such as power loss or transient upset.
 - 3. System shall automatically annunciate communication failures to the operator and shall identify the communications link that has experienced a partial or total failure.
- F. Network controller shall provide operator interface, interaction, display, control, and dynamic and real-time monitoring. Network controller shall control system networks to interconnect all system components, including field-installed node controllers.
- G. Field equipment shall include controllers, sensors, and controls.
 - 1. Controllers shall serve as an interface between the network controller and sensors and controls.
 - 2. Data exchange between the network controller and the node controllers shall include down-line transmission of commands, software, and databases to controllers.
 - 3. The up-line data exchange from the node controller to the network controller shall include status data such as intrusion alarms, status reports, and entry-control records.
 - 4. Controllers are classified as alarm-annunciation or entry-control type.
- H. System Response to Alarms:
 - 1. Field device network shall provide a system end-to-end response time of one second(s) or less for every device connected to the system.
 - 2. Alarms shall be annunciated at the network controller within one second of the alarm occurring at a controller or at a device controlled by a local controller, and within 100 ms if the alarm occurs at the central station.
 - 3. Alarm and status changes shall be displayed within 100 ms after receipt of data by the central station.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

4. All graphics shall be displayed, including graphics-generated map displays, on the console monitor within five seconds of alarm receipt at the security console.
- I. False-Alarm Reduction: The design of the central station and controllers shall contain features to reduce false alarms. Equipment and software shall comply with SIA CP-01.
- J. Error Detection:
 1. Use a cyclic code method to detect single- and double-bit errors, burst errors of eight bits or fewer, and at least 99 percent of all other multibit and burst errors between controllers and the central station.
 2. Interactive or product error-detection codes alone will not be acceptable.
 3. A message shall be in error if one bit is received incorrectly.
 4. Retransmit messages with detected errors.
 5. Allow for an operator-assigned two-digit decimal number to each communications link representing the number of retransmission attempts.
 6. Central station shall print a communication failure alarm message when the number of consecutive retransmission attempts equals the assigned quantity.
 7. Monitor the frequency of data transmission failure for display and logging.
- K. Data Line Supervision: System shall initiate an alarm in response to opening, closing, shorting, or grounding of data transmission lines.
- L. Door Hardware Interface:
 1. Comply with requirements in Division 08 for door hardware required to be monitored or controlled by the security access system.
 2. Electrical characteristics of controllers shall match the signal and power requirements of door hardware.

2.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

2.05 APPLICATION SOFTWARE

- A. System Software: Embedded operating system and application software.
 1. Multiuser multitasking shall allow independent activities and monitoring to occur simultaneously at different workstations.
 2. Graphical user interface shall show pull-down menus and a menu-tree format.
 3. Capability for future additions within the indicated system size limits.
 4. Open architecture that allows importing and exporting of data and interfacing with other systems that are compatible with operating system.
 5. Password-protected operator login and access.
- B. Application Software: Interface between the alarm annunciation and entry-control controllers to monitor sensors, operate displays, report alarms, generate reports, and help train system operators.
 1. Reside at the network controller and node controllers as required to perform specified functions.
 2. Operate and manage peripheral devices.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

3. Manage files for disk I/O, including creating, deleting, and copying files; and automatically maintain a directory of all files, including size and location of each sequential and random-ordered record.
4. Import custom icons into graphics to represent alarms and I/O devices.
5. Globally link I/O so that any I/O can link to any other I/O within the same Location without requiring interaction with the host workstation. This operation shall be at the controller.
6. Globally code I/O links so that any access-granted event can link to any I/O with the same Location without requiring interaction with the host workstation. This operation shall be at the controller.
7. Messages from workstation to controllers and controllers to controllers shall be on a polled network that utilizes check summing and acknowledgment of each message. Communication shall be automatically verified, buffered, and retransmitted if message is not acknowledged.
8. Selectable poll frequency and message time-out settings shall handle bandwidth and latency issues for TCP/IP, RF, and other network controller -to-node controller communications methods by changing the polling frequency and the amount of time the system waits for a response.
9. Automatic and encrypted backups for database and history backups shall be automatically stored at the SMS server and encrypted with a nine-character alphanumeric password that must be used to restore or read data contained in backup.
10. Operator audit trail for recording and reporting all changes made to database and system software.
11. Support network protocol and topology, TCP/IP, Novel Netware, Digital Pathworks, Banyan Vines, LAN/WAN, and RAS.

C. Node Controller Software:

1. Controllers shall operate as autonomous, intelligent processing units.
 - a. Controllers shall make decisions about access control, alarm monitoring, linking functions, and door-locking schedules for their operation, independent of other system components.
 - b. Controllers shall be part of a fully distributed processing-control network.
 - c. The portion of the database associated with a controller, and consisting of parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of points connected to that controller, shall be maintained in the controller.
2. The following functions shall be fully implemented and operational within each controller:
 - a. Monitoring inputs.
 - b. Controlling outputs.
 - c. Automatically reporting alarms to the central station.
 - d. Reporting of sensor and output status to the central station on request.
 - e. Maintaining real time, automatically updated by the network controller at least once a day.
 - f. Communicating with the network controller.
 - g. Executing controller resident programs.
 - h. Diagnosing.
 - i. Downloading and uploading data to and from the central station.
3. Controller Operations at a Location:
 - a. In the event of communication failure between the network controller and a Location, there shall be no degradation in operations at the controllers at that Location. Controllers at each Location shall be connected to a memory buffer with a capacity to store up to 10,000 events; there shall be no loss of transactions in system history files until the buffer overflows.
 - b. Buffered events shall be handled in a first-in-first-out mode of operation.
4. Individual Controller Operation:
 - a. Controllers shall transmit alarms, status changes, and other data to the network controller when communications circuits are operable. If communications are not available, control-

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

lers shall function in a stand-alone mode; operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the network controller, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station. Storage capacity for the latest 1024 events shall be provided at each controller.

- b. Card-reader ports of a controller shall be custom configurable for at least 64 different card-reader or keypad formats. Multiple reader or keypad formats may be used simultaneously at different controllers or within the same controller.
 - c. Controllers shall provide a response to card readers or keypad entries in less than 0.25 seconds, regardless of system size.
 - d. Controllers that are reset, or powered up from a nonpowered state, shall automatically request a parameter download and reboot to their proper working state. This shall happen without any operator intervention.
 - e. Initial Startup: When controllers are brought on-line, database parameters shall be automatically downloaded to them. After initial download is completed, only database changes shall be downloaded to each controller.
 - f. On failure for any reason, controllers shall perform an orderly shutdown and force controller outputs to a predetermined failure-mode state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.
 - g. After power is restored, following a power failure, startup software shall initiate self-test diagnostic routines, after which controllers shall resume normal operation.
 - h. After controller failure, if the database and application software are no longer resident, controllers shall not restart but shall remain in the failure mode until repaired. If database and application programs are resident, controllers shall immediately resume operation. If not, software shall be restored automatically from the network controller.
5. Communications Monitoring:
- a. System shall monitor and report status of TCP/IP communications of each Location.
 - b. Communication status window shall display which controllers are currently communicating, a total count of missed polls since midnight, and which controller last missed a poll.
 - c. Communication status window shall show the type of CPU, the type of I/O board, and the amount of RAM for each controller.
6. Operating systems shall include a real-time clock function that maintains seconds, minutes, hours, day, date, and month. The real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once a day to plus or minus 10 seconds. The time synchronization shall be automatic, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown.

D. Operator Interface:

- 1. Inputs in system shall have two icon representations, one for the normal state and one for the abnormal state.
- 2. When viewing and controlling inputs, displayed icons shall automatically change to the proper icon to display the current system state in real time. Icons shall also display the input's state, whether armed or bypassed, and if the input is in the armed or bypassed state due to a time zone or a manual command.
- 3. Outputs in system shall have two icon representations, one for the secure (locked) state and one for the open (unlocked) state.
- 4. Icons displaying status of the I/O points shall be constantly updated to show their current real-time condition without prompting by the operator.
- 5. The operator shall be able to scroll the list of I/Os and press the appropriate toolbar button, or right click, to command the system to perform the desired function.
- 6. Graphic maps or drawings containing inputs, outputs, and override groups shall include the following:
 - a. Database to import and store full-color maps or drawings and allow for input, output, and override group icons to be placed on maps.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- b. Maps to provide real-time display animation and allow for control of points assigned to them.
 - c. System to allow inputs, outputs, and override groups to be placed on different maps.
 - d. Software to allow changing the order or priority in which maps will be displayed.
 - 7. Override Groups Containing I/Os:
 - a. System shall incorporate override groups that provide the operator with the status and control over user-defined "sets" of I/Os with a single icon.
 - b. Icon shall change automatically to show the live summary status of points in that group.
 - c. Override group icon shall provide a method to manually control or set to time-zone points in the group.
 - d. Override group icon shall allow the expanding of the group to show icons representing the live status for each point in the group, individual control over each point, and the ability to compress the individual icons back into one summary icon.
 - 8. Schedule Overrides of I/Os and Override Groups:
 - a. To accommodate temporary schedule changes that do not fall within the holiday parameters, the operator shall have the ability to override schedules individually for each input, output, or override group.
 - b. Each schedule shall be composed of a minimum of two dates with separate times for each date.
 - c. The first time and date shall be assigned the override state that the point shall advance to when the time and date become current.
 - d. The second time and date shall be assigned the state that the point shall return to when the time and date become current.
 - 9. Copy command in database shall allow for like data to be copied and then edited for specific requirements, to reduce redundant data entry.
- E. Operator Access Control:
- 1. Control operator access to system controls through three password-protected operator levels. System operators and managers with appropriate password clearances shall be able to change operator levels for operators.
 - 2. Three successive attempts by an operator to execute functions beyond their defined level during a 24-hour period shall initiate a software tamper alarm.
 - 3. A minimum of 1024 unique user accounts shall be available with the system software. System shall display the operator's name or initials in the console's first field. System shall print the operator's name or initials, action, date, and time on the system printer at login and logoff.
 - 4. The password shall not be displayed or printed.
 - 5. Each password shall be definable and assignable for the following:
 - a. Selected commands to be usable.
 - b. Access to system software.
 - c. Access to application software.
 - d. Individual zones that are to be accessed.
 - e. Access to database.
- F. Operator Commands:
- 1. Command Input: Plain-language words and acronyms shall allow operators to use the system without extensive training or data-processing backgrounds. System prompts shall be a word, a phrase, or an acronym.
 - 2. Command inputs shall be acknowledged and processing shall start in not less than one second(s).
 - 3. Tasks that are executed by operator's commands shall include the following:

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- a. Acknowledge Alarms: Used to acknowledge that the operator has observed the alarm message.
 - b. Place Zone in Access: Used to remotely disable intrusion-alarm circuits emanating from a specific zone. System shall be structured so that console operator cannot disable tamper circuits.
 - c. Place Zone in Secure: Used to remotely activate intrusion-alarm circuits emanating from a specific zone.
 - d. System Test: Allows the operator to initiate a system-wide operational test.
 - e. Zone Test: Allows the operator to initiate an operational test for a specific zone.
 - f. Print reports.
 - g. Change Operator: Used for changing operators.
 - h. Security Lighting Controls: Allows the operator to remotely turn on or turn off security lights.
 - i. Display Graphics: Used to show any graphic displays implemented in the system. Graphic displays shall be completed within 20 seconds from time of operator command.
 - j. Run system tests.
 - k. Generate and format reports.
 - l. Request help with the system operation.
 - 1) Include in main menus.
 - 2) Provide unique, descriptive, context-sensitive help for selections and functions with the press of one function key.
 - 3) Provide navigation to specific topic from within the first help window.
 - 4) Help shall be accessible outside the application program.
 - m. Entry-Control Commands:
 - 1) Lock (secure) or unlock (open) each controlled entry and exit up to four times a day through time-zone programming.
 - 2) Arm or disarm each monitored input up to four times a day through time-zone programming.
 - 3) Enable or disable readers or keypads up to two times a day through time-zone programming.
 - 4) Enable or disable cards or codes up to four times a day per entry point through access-level programming.
4. Command Input Errors: Show operator input assistance when a command cannot be executed because of operator input errors. Assistance screen shall use plain-language words and phrases to explain why the command cannot be executed. Error responses that require an operator to look up a code in a manual or other document are not acceptable. Conditions causing operator assistance messages include the following:
- a. Command entered is incorrect or incomplete.
 - b. Operator is restricted from using that command.
 - c. Command addresses a point that is disabled or out of service.
 - d. Command addresses a point that does not exist.
 - e. Command is outside the system's capacity.

G. Alarms:

- 1. System Setup:
 - a. Assign manual and automatic responses to incoming-point status change or alarms.
 - b. Automatically respond to input with a link to other inputs, outputs, or operator-response plans; unique sound with use of WAV files; and maps or images that graphically represent the point location.
 - c. Sixty-character message field for each alarm.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- d. Operator-response-action messages shall allow message length of at least 65,000 characters, with database storage capacity of up to 32,000 messages. Setup shall assign messages to access point .
 - e. Secondary messages shall be assignable by the operator for printing to provide further information and shall be editable by the operator.
 - f. Allow 25 secondary messages with a field of four lines of 60 characters each.
 - g. Store the most recent 1000 alarms for recall by the operator using the report generator.
 - 2. Software Tamper:
 - a. Annunciate a tamper alarm when unauthorized changes to system database files are attempted. Three consecutive unsuccessful attempts to log onto system shall generate a software tamper alarm.
 - b. Annunciate a software tamper alarm when an operator or other individual makes three consecutive unsuccessful attempts to invoke functions beyond the authorization level.
 - c. Maintain a transcript file of the last 5000 commands entered at each central station to serve as an audit trail. System shall not allow write access to system transcript files by any person, regardless of their authorization level.
 - d. Allow only acknowledgment of software tamper alarms.
 - 3. Read access to system transcript files shall be reserved for operators with the highest password authorization level available in system.
 - 4. Animated Response Graphics: Highlight alarms with flashing icons on graphic maps; display and constantly update the current status of alarm inputs and outputs in real time through animated icons.
 - 5. Multimedia Alarm Annunciation: WAV files to be associated with alarm events for audio annunciation or instructions.
 - 6. Alarm Handling: Each input may be configured so that an alarm cannot be cleared unless it has returned to normal, with options of requiring the operator to enter a comment about disposition of alarm. Allow operator to silence alarm sound when alarm is acknowledged.
 - 7. Alarm Automation Interface: High-level interface to central-station alarm automation software systems. Allows input alarms to be passed to and handled by automation systems in the same manner as burglar alarms, using a TIA 232-F ASCII interface.
 - 8. CCTV Alarm Interface: Allow commands to be sent to CCTV systems during alarms (or input change of state) through serial ports.
 - 9. Camera Control: Provides operator ability to select and control cameras from graphic maps.
- H. Alarm Monitoring: Monitor sensors, controllers, and DTS circuits and notify operators of an alarm condition. Display higher-priority alarms first and, within alarm priorities, display the oldest unacknowledged alarm first. Operator acknowledgment of one alarm shall not be considered acknowledgment of other alarms nor shall it inhibit reporting of subsequent alarms.
- 1. Displayed alarm data shall include type of alarm, location of alarm, and secondary alarm messages.
 - 2. Printed alarm data shall include type of alarm, location of alarm, date and time (to nearest second) of occurrence, and operator responses.
 - 3. Maps shall automatically display the alarm condition for each input assigned to that map if that option is selected for that input location.
 - 4. Alarms initiate a status of "pending" and require the following two handling steps by operators:
 - a. First Operator Step: "Acknowledged." This action shall silence sounds associated with the alarm. The alarm remains in the system "Acknowledged" but "Un-Resolved."
 - b. Second Operator Step: Operators enter the resolution or operator comment, giving the disposition of the alarm event. The alarm shall then clear.
 - 5. Each workstation shall display the total pending alarms and total unresolved alarms.
 - 6. Each alarm point shall be programmable to disallow the resolution of alarms until the alarm point has returned to its normal state.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

7. Alarms shall transmit to the central station in real time except for allowing connection time for dial-up locations.
 8. Alarms shall be displayed and managed from a minimum of four different windows.
 - a. Input Status Window: Overlay status icon with a large red blinking icon. Selecting the icon will acknowledge the alarm.
 - b. History Log Transaction Window: Display name, time, and date in red text. Selecting red text will acknowledge the alarm.
 - c. Alarm Log Transaction Window: Display name, time, and date in red. Selecting red text will acknowledge the alarm.
 - d. Graphic Map Display: Display a steady colored icon representing each alarm input location. Change icon to flashing red when the alarm occurs. Change icon from flashing red to steady red when the alarm is acknowledged.
 9. Once an alarm is acknowledged, the operator shall be prompted to enter comments about the nature of the alarm and actions taken. Operator's comments may be manually entered or selected from a programmed predefined list, or a combination of both.
 10. For locations where there are regular alarm occurrences, provide programmed comments. Selecting that comment shall clear the alarm.
 11. The time and name of the operator who acknowledged and resolved the alarm shall be recorded in the database.
 12. Identical alarms from the same alarm point shall be acknowledged at the same time the operator acknowledges the first alarm. Identical alarms shall be resolved when the first alarm is resolved.
 13. Alarm functions shall have priority over downloading, retrieving, and updating database from workstations and controllers.
 14. When a reader-controlled output (relay) is opened, the corresponding alarm point shall be automatically bypassed.
- I. Monitor Display: Display text and graphic maps that include zone status integrated into the display. Colors are used for the various components and current data. Colors shall be uniform throughout the system.
1. Color Code:
 - a. FLASHING RED: Alerts operator that a zone has gone into an alarm or that primary power has failed.
 - b. STEADY RED: Alerts operator that a zone is in alarm and alarm has been acknowledged.
 - c. YELLOW: Advises operator that a zone is in access.
 - d. GREEN: Indicates that a zone is secure and that power is on.
 2. Graphics:
 - a. Support 32,000 graphic display maps and allow import of maps from a minimum of 16 standard formats from another drawing or graphics program.
 - b. Allow I/O to be placed on graphic maps by the drag-and-drop method.
 - c. Operators shall be able to view the inputs, outputs, and the point's name by moving the mouse cursor over the point on the graphic map.
 - d. Inputs or outputs may be placed on multiple graphic maps. The operator shall be able to toggle to view graphic maps associated with I/Os.
 - e. Each graphic map shall have a display-order sequence number associated with it to provide a predetermined order when toggled to different views.
 - f. Camera icons shall have the ability to be placed on graphic maps that, when selected by an operator, will open a video window, display the camera associated with that icon, and provide pan-tilt-zoom control.
 - g. Input, output, or camera placed on a map shall allow the ability to arm or bypass an input, open or secure an output, or control the pan-tilt-zoom function of the selected camera.
- J. System test software enables operators to initiate a test of the entire system or of a particular portion of the system.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

1. Test Report: The results of each test shall be stored for future display or printout. The report shall document the operational status of system components.
- K. Report-Generator Software: Include commands to generate reports for displaying, printing, and storing on disk and tape. Reports shall be stored by type, date, and time. Report printing shall be the lowest-priority activity. Report-generation mode shall be operator selectable but set up initially as periodic, automatic, or on request. Include time and date printed and the name of operator generating the report. Report formats may be configured by operators.
 1. Automatic Printing: Setup shall specify, modify, or inhibit the report to be generated; the time the initial report is to be generated; the time interval between reports; the end of the period; and the default printer.
 2. Printing on Request: An operator may request a printout of any report.
 3. Alarm Reports: Reporting shall be automatic as initially set up. Include alarms recorded by system over the selected time and information about the type of alarm (such as door alarm, intrusion alarm, tamper alarm, etc.), the type of sensor, the location, the time, and the action taken.
 4. Access and Secure Reports: Document zones placed in access, the time placed in access, and the time placed in secure mode.
 5. Custom Reports: Reports tailored to exact requirements of who, what, when, and where. As an option, custom report formats may be stored for future printing.
 6. Automatic History Reports: Named, saved, and scheduled for automatic generation.
 7. Cardholder Reports: Include data, or selected parts of the data, as well as the ability to be sorted by name, card number, imprinted number, or by any of the user-defined fields.
 8. Cardholder by Reader Reports: Based on who has access to a specific reader or group of readers by selecting the readers from a list.
 9. Cardholder by Access-Level Reports: Display everyone that has been assigned to the specified access level.
 10. Who Is "In" (Muster) Report:
 - a. Emergency Muster Report: One-click operation on toolbar launches report.
 - b. Cardholder Report. Contain a count of persons who are "In" at a selected Location and a detailed listing of name, date, and time of last use, sorted by the last reader used or by the group assignment.
 11. Panel Labels Reports: Printout of control-panel field documentation including the actual location of equipment, programming parameters, and wiring identification. Maintain system installation data within system database so that data are available on-site at all times.
 12. Activity and Alarm On-Line Printing: Activity printers for use at workstations; prints all events, or alarms only.
 13. History Reports: Custom reports that allow the operator to select any date, time, event type, device, output, input, operator, Location, name, or cardholder to be included or excluded from the report.
 - a. Initially store history on the hard disk of the host workstation.
 - b. Permit viewing of the history on workstations or print history to any system printer.
 - c. The report shall be definable by a range of dates and times with the ability to have a daily start and stop time over a given date range.
 - d. Each report shall depict the date, time, event type, event description, and device; or I/O name, cardholder group assignment, and cardholder name or code number.
 - e. Each line of a printed report shall be numbered to ensure that the integrity of the report has not been compromised.
 - f. Total number of lines of the report shall be given at the end of the report. If the report is run for a single event such as "Alarms," the total shall reflect how many alarms occurred during that period.
 14. Reports shall have the following four options:
 - a. View on screen.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- b. Print to system printer. Include automatic print spooling and "Print To" options if more than one printer is connected to the system.
 - c. "Save to File" with full path statement.
 - d. System shall have the ability to produce a report indicating status of system inputs and outputs or of inputs and outputs that are abnormal, out of time zone, manually overridden, not reporting, or in alarm.
 - 15. Custom Code List Subroutine: Allow the access codes of system to be sorted and printed according to the following criteria:
 - a. Active, inactive, or future activate or deactivate.
 - b. Code number, name, or imprinted card number.
 - c. Group, Location access levels.
 - d. Start and stop code range.
 - e. Codes that have not been used since a selectable number of days.
 - f. In, out, or either status.
 - g. Codes with trace designation.
 - 16. The reports of system database shall allow options so that every data field may be printed.
 - 17. The reports of system database shall be constructed so that the actual position of the printed data shall closely match the position of the data on the data-entry windows.
- L. Anti-Passback:
- 1. System shall have global and local anti-passback features, selectable by Location. System shall support hard and soft anti-passback.
 - 2. Hard Anti-Passback: Once a credential holder is granted access through a reader with one type of designation (IN or OUT), the credential holder may not pass through that type of reader designation until the credential holder passes through a reader of opposite designation.
 - 3. Soft Anti-Passback: Should a violation of the proper IN or OUT sequence occur, access shall be granted, but a unique alarm shall be transmitted to the control station, reporting the credential holder and the door involved in the violation. A separate report may be run on this event.
 - 4. Timed Anti-Passback: A controller capability that prevents an access code from being used twice at the same device (door) within a user-defined amount of time.
 - 5. Provide four separate zones per Location that can operate without requiring interaction with the host workstation (done at controller). Each reader shall be assignable to one or all four anti-passback zones. In addition, each anti-passback reader can be further designated as "Hard," "Soft," or "Timed" in each of the four anti-passback zones. The four anti-passback zones shall operate independently.
 - 6. The anti-passback schemes shall be definable for each individual door.
 - 7. The Master Access Level shall override anti-passback.
 - 8. System shall have the ability to forgive (or reset) an individual credential holder or the entire credential-holder population anti-passback status to a neutral status.
- M. Visitor Assignment:
- 1. Provide for and allow an operator to be restricted to only working with visitors. The visitor badging subsystem shall assign credentials and enroll visitors. Allow only those access levels that have been designated as approved for visitors.
 - 2. Provide an automated log of visitor name, time and doors accessed, and name of person contacted.
 - 3. Allow a visitor designation to be assigned to a credential holder.
 - 4. Security access system shall be able to restrict the access levels that may be assigned to credentials issued to visitors.
 - 5. Allow operator to recall visitors' credential-holder file once a visitor is enrolled in the system.
 - 6. The operator may designate any reader as one that deactivates the credential after use at that reader. The history log shall show the return of the credential.
 - 7. System shall have the ability to use the visitor designation in searches and reports. Reports shall be able to print all or any visitor activity.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

N. Time and Attendance:

1. Time and attendance reporting shall be provided to match IN and OUT reads and display cumulative time in for each day and cumulative time in for length designated in the report.
2. Shall be provided to match IN and OUT reads and display cumulative time in for each day and cumulative time in for length designated in the report.
3. System software setup shall allow designation of selected access-control readers as time and attendance hardware to gather the clock-in and clock-out times of the users at these readers.
 - a. Reports shall show in and out times for each day, total time in for each day, and a total time in for period specified by the user.
 - b. Allow the operator to view and print the reports, or save the reports to a file.
 - c. Alphabetically sort reports on the person's last name, by Location or location group. Include all credential holders or optionally select individual credential holders for the report.

O. Training Software: Enables operators to practice system operation, including alarm acknowledgment, alarm assessment, response force deployment, and response force communications. System shall continue normal operation during training exercises and shall terminate exercises when an alarm signal is received at the console.

P. Entry-Control Enrollment Software: Database management functions that allow operators to add, delete, and modify access data as needed.

1. The enrollment station shall not have alarm response or acknowledgment functions.
2. Provide multiple, password-protected access levels. Database management and modification functions shall require a higher operator access level than personnel enrollment functions.
3. The program shall provide means to disable the enrollment station when it is unattended, to prevent unauthorized use.
4. The program shall provide a method to enter personnel identifying information into the entry-control database files through enrollment stations. In the case of personnel identity-verification subsystems, this shall include biometric data. Allow entry of personnel identifying information into the system database using menu selections and data fields. The data field names shall be customized during setup to suit user and site needs. Personnel identity-verification subsystems selected for use with the system shall fully support the enrollment function and shall be compatible with the entry-control database files.
5. Cardholder Data: Provide 99 user-defined fields. System shall have the ability to run searches and reports using any combination of these fields. Each user-defined field shall be configurable, using any combination of the following features:
 - a. MASK: Determines a specific format with which data must comply.
 - b. REQUIRED: Operator is required to enter data into field before saving.
 - c. UNIQUE: Data entered must be unique.
 - d. DEACTIVATE DATE: Data entered will be evaluated as an additional deactivate date for all cards assigned to this cardholder.
 - e. NAME ID: Data entered will be considered a unique ID for the cardholder.
6. Personnel Search Engine: A report generator with capabilities such as search by last name, first name, group, or any predetermined user-defined data field; by codes not used in definable number of days; by skills; or by seven other methods.
7. Multiple Deactivate Dates for Cards: User-defined fields to be configured as additional stop dates to deactivate any cards assigned to the cardholder.
8. Batch card printing.
9. Default card data can be programmed to speed data entry for sites where most card data are similar.
10. Enhanced ASCII File Import Utility: Allows the importing of cardholder data and images.
11. Card Expire Function: Allows readers to be configured to deactivate cards when a card is used at selected devices.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

2.06 SYSTEM DATABASE

- A. Database and database management software shall define and modify each point in database using operator commands. Definition shall include parameters and constraints associated with each system device.
- B. Database Operations:
 - 1. System data management shall be in a hierarchical menu-tree format, with navigation through expandable menu branches and manipulated with use of menus and icons in a main menu and system toolbar.
 - 2. Navigational Aids:
 - a. Toolbar icons for add, delete, copy, print, capture image, activate, deactivate, and muster report.
 - b. Point and click feature to facilitate data manipulation.
 - c. Next and previous command buttons visible when editing database fields to facilitate navigation from one record to the next.
 - d. Copy command and copy tool in the toolbar to copy data from one record to create a new similar record.
 - 3. Data entry shall be automatically checked for duplicate and illegal data and shall be verified for valid format.
 - 4. System shall generate a memo or note field for each item that is stored in database, allowing the storing of information about any defining characteristics of the item. Memo field is used for noting the purpose for which the item was entered, reasons for changes that were made, and the like.
- C. File Management:
 - 1. File management shall include database backup and restoration system, allowing selection of storage media, including 3.5-inch floppy disk, Zip and Jaz drives, and designated network resources.
 - 2. Operations shall be both manual and automatic modes. The number of automatic sequential backups before the oldest backup will be overwritten; FIFO mode shall be operator selectable.
 - 3. Backup program shall provide manual operation from any workstation on the LAN and shall operate while system remains operational.
- D. Operator Passwords:
 - 1. Support up to 32,000 individual system operators, each with a unique password.
 - 2. One to eight alphanumeric characters.
 - 3. Allow passwords to be case sensitive.
 - 4. Passwords shall not be displayed when entered.
 - 5. Passwords shall have unique and customizable password profile, and allow several operators to share a password profile. Include the following features in the password profile:
 - a. Predetermine the highest-level password profile for access to all functions and areas of program.
 - b. Allow or disallow operator access to any program operation, including the functions of View, Add, Edit, and Delete.
 - c. Restrict doors to which an operator can assign access.
 - 6. Operators shall use a user name and password to log on to system. This user name and password shall be used to access database areas and programs as determined by the associated profile.
 - 7. Make provision to allow the operator to log off without fully exiting program. User may be logged off but program will remain running while displaying the login window for the next operator.
- E. Access Card/Code Operation and Management: Access authorization shall be by card, by a manually entered code (PIN), or by a combination of both (card plus PIN).

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

1. Access authorization shall verify the facility code first, the card or card-and-PIN validation second, and the access level (time of day, day of week, date), anti-passback status, and number of uses last.
 2. Use data-entry windows to view, edit, and issue access levels. Access-authorization entry-management system shall maintain and coordinate all access levels to prevent duplication or the incorrect creation of levels.
 3. Allow assignment of multiple cards/codes to a cardholder.
 4. Allow assignment of up to four access levels for each Location to a cardholder. Each access level may contain any combination of doors.
 5. Each door may be assigned four time zones.
 6. Access codes may be up to 11 digits in length.
 7. Software shall allow the grouping of locations so cardholder data can be shared by all locations in the group.
 8. Visitor Access: Issue a visitor badge for data tracking or photo ID purposes without assigning that person a card or code.
 9. Cardholder Tracing: Allow for selection of cardholder for tracing. Make a special audible and visible annunciation at control station when a selected card or code is used at a designated code reader. Annunciation shall include an automatic display of the cardholder image.
 10. Allow each cardholder to be given either an unlimited number of uses or a number from one to 9999 that regulates the number of times the card can be used before it is automatically deactivated.
 11. Provide for cards and codes to be activated and deactivated manually or automatically by date. Provide for multiple deactivate dates to be preprogrammed.
- F. Security Access Integration:
1. Photo ID badging and photo verification shall use the same database as the security access and may query data from cardholder, group, and other personal information to build a custom ID badge.
 2. Automatic or manual image recall and manual access based on photo verification shall also be a means of access verification and entry.
 3. System shall allow sorting of cardholders together by group or other characteristic for a fast and efficient method of reporting on, and enabling or disabling, cards or codes.
- G. Key control and tracking shall be an integrated function of cardholder data.
1. Provide the ability to store information about which conventional metal keys are issued and to whom, along with key construction information.
 2. Reports shall be designed to list everyone who possesses a specified key.
- H. Facility Codes: System shall accommodate up to 2048 facility codes per Location, with the option of allowing facility codes to work at all doors or only at particular doors.
- I. Operator Comments:
1. With the press of one appropriate button on the toolbar, the user shall be permitted to enter operator comments into the history at any time.
 2. Automatic prompting of operator comment shall occur before the resolution of each alarm.
 3. Operator comments shall be recorded by time, date, and operator number.
 4. Comments shall be sorted and viewed through reports and history.
 5. The operator may enter comments in two ways; either or both may be used:
 - a. Manually entered through keyboard data entry (typed), up to 65,000 characters per each alarm.
 - b. Predefined and stored in database for retrieval on request.
 6. System shall have a minimum of 999 predefined operator comments with up to 30 characters per comment.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

J. Group:

1. Group names may be used to sort cardholders into groups that allow the operator to determine the tenant, vendor, contractor, department, division, or any other designation of a group to which the person belongs.
2. System software shall have the capacity to assign one of 32,000 group names to an access authorization.
3. Make provision in software to deactivate and reactivate all access authorizations assigned to a particular group.
4. Allow sorting of history reports and code list printouts by group name.

K. Time Zones:

1. Each zone consists of a start and stop time for seven days of the week and three holiday schedules. A time zone is assigned to inputs, outputs, or access levels to determine when an input shall automatically arm or disarm, when an output automatically opens or secures, or when access authorization assigned to an access level will be denied or granted.
2. Up to four time zones may be assigned to inputs and outputs to allow up to four arm or disarm periods per day or four lock or unlock periods per day; up to three holiday override schedules may be assigned to a time zone.
3. Data-entry window shall display a dynamically linked bar graph showing active and inactive times for each day and holiday, as start and stop times are entered or edited.
4. System shall have the capacity for 2048 time zones for each Location.

L. Holidays:

1. Three different holiday schedules may be assigned to a time zone. Holiday schedule consists of date in format MM/DD/YYYY and a description. When the holiday date matches the current date of the time zone, the holiday schedule replaces the time-zone schedule for that 24-hour period.
2. System shall have the capacity for 32,000 holidays.
3. Three separate holiday schedules may be applied to a time zone.
4. Holidays have an option to be designated as occurring on the designated date each year. These holidays remain in the system and will not be purged.
5. Holidays not designated to occur each year shall be automatically purged from the database after the date expires.

M. Access Levels:

1. System shall allow for the creation of up to 32,000 access levels.
2. One level shall be predefined as the Master Access Level. The Master Access Level shall work at all doors at all times and override any anti-passback.
3. System shall allow for access to be restricted to any area by reader and by time. Access levels shall determine when and where an Identifier is authorized.
4. System shall be able to create multiple door and time-zone combinations under the same access level so that an Identifier may be valid during different time periods at different readers even if the readers are on the same controller.

N. User-Defined Fields:

1. System shall provide a minimum of 99 user-defined fields, each with up to 50 characters, for specific information about each credential holder.
2. System shall accommodate a title for each field; field length shall be 20 characters.
3. A "Required" option may be applied to each user-defined field that, when selected, forces the operator to enter data in the user-defined field before the credential can be saved.
4. A "Unique" option may be applied to each user-defined field that, when selected, will not allow duplicate data from different credential holders to be entered.
5. Data format option may be assigned to each user-defined field that will require the data to be entered with certain character types in specific spots in the field entry window.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

6. A user-defined field, if selected, will define the field as a deactivate date. The selection shall automatically cause the data to be formatted with the windows MM/DD/YYYY date format. The credential of the holder will be deactivated on that date.
7. A search function shall allow any one user-defined field or combination of user-defined fields to be searched to find the appropriate cardholder. The search function shall include a search for a character string.
8. System shall have the ability to print cardholders based on and organized by the user-defined fields.

O. Code Tracing:

1. System shall perform code tracing selectable by cardholder and by reader.
2. Any code may be designated as a "traced code" with no limit to how many codes can be traced.
3. Any reader may be designated as a "trace reader" with no limit to which or how many readers can be used for code tracing.
4. When a traced code is used at a trace reader, the access-granted message that usually appears on the monitor window of the central station shall be highlighted with a different color than regular messages. A short singular beep shall occur at the same time the highlighted message is displayed on the window.
5. The traced cardholder image (if image exists) shall appear on workstations when used at a trace reader.

2.07 SURGE AND TAMPER PROTECTION

- A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor-entry connection to components.
1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.08 NETWORK CONTROLLER HARDWARE

- A. Description: The Network Controller shall contain the operating system, database engine, web server, application software, and configuration data.
- B. Servers:
1. Mounting: 1U Rack blade.
 2. Power: Single power supply, minimum 300 W.
 3. Performance Requirements:
 - a. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
 - b. Energy Star compliant.
 4. Processor:

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- a. Minimum Speed: 2.5 GHz,
- b. Cores: Dual.
- 5. RAM:
 - a. Capacity: 8 GB.
- 6. Hard Drives: Solid state.
- 7. Network Interface: Single port Gigabit Ethernet.
- 8. Web Server:
 - a. Software licenses.
 - b. Firewalls between server Web and networks.
 - c. Password protection for access to server from Web server.
 - d. Cable installation between the server(s) and building Ethernet network.
- 9. Power each server through UPS unit.
- 10. Support communication for each node controller with minimum 20% spare capacity allowance.
- 11. Server Requirements:
 - a. Operating System: Microsoft Windows
 - b. Network Interface: 1000BASE-T Ethernet
- 12. Acceptable Web Browsers:
 - a. PC: Internet Explorer, Firefox, Safari, Opera, Chrome, all non-JavaScript browsers.
 - b. HTML Compliance: HTML 4.0

2.09 NODE CONTROLLERS

- A. Description: Field-installed controller at each Location connected to the system's inputs, outputs, and readers that manages access control decisions with data provided by the Network Controller.
- B. Controllers: Intelligent peripheral control unit, complying with UL 294, that stores time, date, valid codes, access levels, and similar data downloaded from the central station or workstation for controlling its operation.
- C. Alarm Annunciation:
 - 1. The controller shall automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network.
 - a. Inputs: Monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions. Provides at least eight alarm inputs, which are suitable for wiring as normally open or normally closed contacts for alarm conditions.
 - b. Alarm-Line Supervision:
 - 1) Supervise the alarm lines by monitoring each circuit for changes or disturbances in the signal using dc change measurements. System shall initiate an alarm in response to an abnormal current, which is a dc change of 10 percent or more for longer than 500 ms.
 - 2) Transmit alarm-line-supervision alarm to the central station during the next interrogation cycle after the abnormal current condition.
 - c. Outputs: Managed by network controller software.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

2. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet inside the controller enclosure.

D. Entry-Control:

1. Function: Provide local entry-control functions including one- and two-way communications with access-control devices such as card readers, keypads, biometric personnel identity-verification devices, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.
 - a. Operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the controller and the field-device network.
 - b. Accept information generated by the entry-control devices; automatically process this information to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal:
 - 1) On authentication of the credentials or information presented, check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
 - 2) Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control.
 - c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction. A transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.
2. Inputs:
 - a. Data from entry-control devices; use this input to change modes between access and secure.
 - b. Database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.
3. Outputs:
 - a. Indicate success or failure of attempts to use entry-control devices and make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
 - b. Grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
 - c. Maintain a date-, time-, and Location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.
 - d. Door Prop Alarm: If a portal is held open for longer than 20 seconds, alarm sounds.
4. With power supplies sufficient to power at voltage and frequency required for field devices and portal-control devices.
5. Data Line Problems: For periods of loss of communication with the central station, or when data transmission is degraded and generating continuous checksum errors, the controller shall continue to control entry by accepting identifying information, making authentication decisions, checking privileges, and controlling portal-control devices.
 - a. Store up to 1000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the controller and access-control devices for subsequent upload to the central station on restoration of communication.
6. Controller Power: NFPA 70, Class II power-supply transformer, with 12- or 24-V dc secondary, backup battery and charger.
 - a. Backup Battery: Valve-regulated, recombinant-sealed, lead-acid battery; spill proof. With single-stage, constant-voltage-current, limited battery charger, comply with battery manufacturer's written instructions for battery terminal voltage and charging current recommendations for maximum battery life.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- b. Backup Power-Supply Capacity: Sufficient power to provide for an orderly shutdown of the system in case of loss of external power.
- c. Power Monitoring: Provide manual, dynamic battery-load test, initiated and monitored at the control center; with automatic disconnection of the controller when battery voltage drops below controller limits. Report by using local controller-mounted digital displays and by communicating status to central station. Indicate normal power on and battery charger on trickle charge. Indicate and report the following:
 - 1) Trouble Alarm: Normal power-off load assumed by battery.
 - 2) Trouble Alarm: Low battery.
 - 3) Alarm: Power off.

2.10 ENROLLMENT CENTER

- A. Description: Integrated ID badging system with SMS. No extra licensing shall
- B. Equipment for enrolling personnel into, and removing personnel from, system database, using a dedicated desktop workstation
 - 1. Include equipment to enroll selected biometric credentials.
- C. Enrollment equipment shall support encoding of credential cards including cryptographic and other internal security checks as required for system.
 - 1. Allow only authorized entry-control enrollment personnel to access the enrollment equipment using passwords.
 - 2. Include enrollment-subsystem configuration controls and electronic diagnostic aids for subsystem setup and troubleshooting with the central station.
 - 3. Enrollment-station records printer shall meet requirements of the report printer.
- D. Entry-Control Enrollment Software:
 - 1. Shall include database management functions for the system, and shall allow an operator to change and modify the data entered in the system as needed.
 - 2. Software shall not have alarm response or acknowledgment functions as a programmable function.
 - 3. Multiple, password-protected access levels shall be provided at the enrollment station.
 - 4. Database management and modification functions shall require a higher operator-access level than personnel enrollment functions.
 - 5. Software shall provide a means for disabling the enrollment station when it is unattended, to prevent unauthorized use.
 - 6. Software shall provide a method to enter personnel identifying information into the entry-control database files through enrollment stations to include a credential unit in use at the installation.
 - 7. In the case of personnel identity-verification subsystems, this data shall include biometric data.
 - 8. Software shall allow entry of this data into the system database files through the use of simple menu selections and data fields. The data field names shall be customized to suit user and site needs.
 - 9. Personnel identity-verification subsystems selected for use with the system shall fully support the enrollment function and shall be compatible with the entry-control database files.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Steel desk-type console, swivel chair on casters, and equipment racks.
 - 2. Console and Equipment Racks: Comply with EIA/ECA-310-E.
 - 3. Equipment, with the exception of the printers, shall be rack mounted in the console and equipment racks.
 - 4. Storage Cabinet: Locking cabinet approximately **72 inches (1830 mm)** high, **36 inches (915 mm)** wide, and **24 inches (610 mm)** deep, with three adjustable shelves and two storage racks.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- F. System Capacity: Number of badges shall be limited only by hard disk space. Badge templates and images shall be in color, supporting the maximum color capability of workstation operating system.
- G. Badge Configuration:
 - 1. Software for badge template creation shall include a template consisting of background and predetermined locations of photographs, text objects and data fields for text, and bar-code and biometric information. Include automatic sizing of data fields placed on a badge to compensate for names, which may otherwise be too large to fit in the area designated.
 - 2. Allow different badge templates to be used for each department, tenant, or visitor.
 - 3. As a setup option, templates shall be automatically selected for the badge, based on the group to which the credential holder is assigned. Allow the operator to override the automatic template selection and use a template chosen by the operator for creating a badge.
 - 4. Setup shall determine which graphics and credential-holder information will be displayed and where on the card it will be placed. All data in the security access system, such as name, code, group, access level, and any of the 99 user-defined fields, shall be selectable, with the ability to place them anywhere on the card.
 - 5. System shall include an importing, filing, and recall system of stored images and shapes that can be placed on the badge.
 - 6. Allow multiple images on the same badge, including, but not limited to, bar codes, digital photos, and signatures.
 - 7. Support transparent backgrounds so that image is only surrounded by the intended background and not by its immediate background.
- H. Photo Imaging: Integral to security access.
 - 1. Import images from bitmap file formats, digital cameras, TWAIN cameras, or scanners. Allow image cropping and editing, WYSIWYG badge-building application, and badge print-preview and printing capabilities.
 - 2. System shall support multiple images stored for each credential holder, including signatures, portrait views, and profile views.
- I. Text Objects: Badge configuration shall provide for creation of custom text as an object, allowing font selection, typing, scaling, and formatting of the text object. Formatting options shall include changing font, font size, text flow, and text alignment; bending or curving the text object into a circle or semicircle; applying 3-D effects; and applying predefined effects such as tilt, extrusion, or beveling. Text shall be placed and optionally automatically centered within any region of the badge layout.
- J. Badges and Credential Cards:
 - 1. Badges are credential cards that do not contain data to be read by card readers.
 - 2. Credential cards shall store uniquely coded data used by card readers as an Identifier.
 - a. Proximity Cards: Use proximity detection without physical contact with the reader for proper operation.
 - 3. Allow entry-control card to be modified by lamination or direct print process during the enrollment process for use as a picture and identification badge without reduction of readability. The design shall allow for the addition of at least one slot or hole to accommodate the attachment of a clip for affixing the credential card to the type of badge holder used at the site.
 - a. Card Size and Dimensional Stability: Standard size, 2-1/8 by 3-3/8 inches (54 by 86 mm); dimensionally stable so that an undamaged card with deformations resulting from normal use shall be readable by the card reader.
 - b. Card Material: Abrasion resistant, nonflammable, and nontoxic; and impervious to solar radiation and effects of ultraviolet light.
 - c. Card Construction: Core and laminate or monolithic construction. Lettering, logos, and other markings shall be hot stamped into the credential material or direct printed.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- 1) Incorporate phosphorous ink as a security enhancement.
 - 2) Furnish equipment for on-site assembly and lamination of credential cards.
- d. Card Durability and Maintainability: Designed and constructed to yield a useful lifetime of at least five years or 5000 insertions or swipes, whichever results in a longer period of time. Allow credential cards to be cleaned by wiping with a sponge or cloth wetted with soap and water.
- K. Card-Making Equipment: Consisting of a workstation, video camera, video-imaging equipment, and a printer.
1. Camera: NTSC color standard, RGB video output, 470 lines minimum horizontal resolution, and automatic white balance with full rated output under illumination of 0.5 fc (5 lx).
 2. Video Imaging: Live-image capture software and hardware and a digital signature capture pad.
 3. Standard workstation, modified as follows:
 - a. Redundant workstation is not required.
 - b. Printer is not required.
 - c. UPS is not required.
 - d. Sound card is not required.
 4. Printer: Dye-sublimation resin thermal transfer, 300 dpi resolution, 16.7 million colors, accepting cards ranging in size from 2.1 by 3 inches to 2.6 by 3.7 inches (53 by 76 mm to 66 by 94 mm) and having card thickness ranging from 0.020 to 0.060 inch (0.5 to 1.5 mm). Printer shall have options for encoding magnetic stripe using tracks 1, 2, and 3. Throughput shall be not less than 60 seconds per card.

2.11 DOOR AND GATE HARDWARE INTERFACE

- A. Exit Device with Alarm: Operation of the exit device shall generate an alarm. Exit device and alarm contacts are specified in Division 08 "Door Hardware."
- B. Exit Alarm: Operation of a monitored door shall generate an alarm. Exit devices and alarm contacts are specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- C. Electric Door Strikes: Use end-of-line resistors to provide power-line supervision. Signal switches shall transmit data to controller to indicate when the bolt is not engaged and the strike mechanism is unlocked, and they shall report a forced entry. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electric strikes are specified in Division 08 "Door Hardware."
- D. Electromagnetic Locks: End-of-line resistors shall provide power-line supervision. Lock status sensing signal shall positively indicate door is secure. Power and signal shall be from the controller. Electromagnetic locks are specified in Division 08 "Door Hardware."
- E. Vehicle Gate Operator: Interface electrical operation of gate with controls in this Section. Vehicle gate operators shall be connected, monitored, and controlled by the security access controllers. Vehicle gate and accessories are specified in Division 33.

2.12 FIELD-PROCESSING SOFTWARE

- A. Operating System:
 1. Local processors shall contain an operating system that controls and schedules that local processor's activities in real time.
 2. Local processor shall maintain a point database in its memory that includes parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of all points connected to that local processor.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

3. Execution of local processor application programs shall utilize the data in memory resident files.
4. Operating system shall include a real-time clock function that maintains the seconds, minutes, hours, date, and month, including day of the week.
5. Local processor real-time clock shall be automatically synchronized with the central station at least once per day to plus or minus 10 seconds (the time synchronization shall be accomplished automatically, without operator action and without requiring system shutdown).

B. Startup Software:

1. Causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions.
2. Local processor restart program based on detection of power failure at the local processor shall be included in the local processor software.
3. Initiates operation of self-test diagnostic routines.
4. Upon failure of the local processor, if the database and application software are no longer resident, the local processor shall not restart and systems shall remain in the failure mode indicated until the necessary repairs are made.
5. If the database and application programs are resident, the local processor shall immediately resume operation.

C. Operating Mode:

1. Local processors shall control and monitor inputs and outputs as specified, independent of communications with the central station or designated workstations.
2. Alarms, status changes, and other data shall be transmitted to the central station or designated workstations when communications circuits are operable.
3. If communications are not available, each local processor shall function in a stand-alone mode and operational data, including the status and alarm data normally transmitted to the central station or designated workstations, shall be stored for later transmission to the central station or designated workstations.
4. Storage for the latest 4000 events shall be provided at local processors, as a minimum.
5. Local processors shall accept software downloaded from the central station.
6. Panel shall support flash ROM technology to accomplish firmware downloads from a central location.

D. Failure Mode: Upon failure for any reason, each local processor shall perform an orderly shutdown and force all local processor outputs to a predetermined (failure-mode) state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device.

E. Functions:

1. Monitoring of inputs.
2. Control of outputs.
3. Reporting of alarms automatically to the central station.
4. Reporting of sensor and output status to central station upon request.
5. Maintenance of real time, automatically updated by the central station at least once a day.
6. Communication with the central station.
7. Execution of local processor resident programs.
8. Diagnostics.
9. Download and upload data to and from the central station.

2.13 FIELD-PROCESSING HARDWARE

A. Alarm Annunciation Local Processor:

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

1. Respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
4. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
5. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
6. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 milliseconds.
7. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central computer during the next interrogation cycle.
8. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
9. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
10. Local processor shall have at least four command outputs.
11. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.

B. Processor Power Supply:

1. Local processor and sensors shall be powered from an uninterruptible power source.
2. Uninterruptible power source shall provide eight hours of battery back-up power in the event of primary power failure and shall automatically fully recharge the batteries within 12 hours after primary power is restored.
3. If the facility is without an emergency generator, the uninterruptible power source shall provide 24 hours of battery backup power.
4. There shall be no equipment malfunctions or perturbations or loss of data during the switch from primary to battery power and vice versa.
5. Batteries shall be sealed, non-outgassing type.
6. Power supply shall be equipped with an indicator for ac input power and an indicator for dc output power.
7. Loss of primary power shall be reported to the central station as an alarm.

C. Auxiliary Equipment Power: A GFI service outlet shall be furnished inside the local processor's enclosure.

D. Entry-Control Local Processor:

1. Entry-control local processor shall respond to interrogations from the field device network, recognize and store alarm status inputs until they are transmitted to the central station, and change outputs based on commands received from the central station.
2. Local processor shall also automatically restore communication within 10 seconds after an interruption with the field device network and provide dc line supervision on each of its alarm inputs.
3. Entry-control local processor shall provide local entry-control functions including communicating with field devices such as card readers, keypads, biometric personnel identity-verification devices, door strikes, magnetic latches, gate and door operators, and exit push buttons.
4. Processor shall also accept data from entry-control field devices as well as database downloads and updates from the central station that include enrollment and privilege information.
5. Processor shall send indications of successful or failed attempts to use entry-control field devices and shall make comparisons of presented information with stored identification information.
6. Processor shall grant or deny entry by sending control signals to portal-control devices and mask intrusion-alarm annunciation from sensors stimulated by authorized entries.
7. Entry-control local processor shall use inputs from entry-control devices to change modes between access and secure.
8. Local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction and transmit transaction records to the central station.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

9. Processor shall operate as a stand-alone portal controller using the downloaded database during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station.
10. Processor shall store a minimum of 4000 transactions during periods of communication loss between the local processor and the central station for subsequent upload to the central station upon restoration of communication.
11. Local processor inputs shall monitor dry contacts for changes of state that reflect alarm conditions.
12. Local processor shall have at least eight alarm inputs which allow wiring contacts as normally open or normally closed for alarm conditions; and shall also provide line supervision for each input by monitoring each input for abnormal open, grounded, or shorted conditions using dc current change measurements.
13. Local processor shall report line supervision alarms to the central station.
14. Alarms shall be reported for any condition that remains abnormal at an input for longer than 500 ms.
15. Alarm condition shall be transmitted to the central station during the next interrogation cycle.
16. Entry-control local processor shall include the necessary software drivers to communicate with entry-control field devices. Information generated by the entry-control field devices shall be accepted by the local processor and automatically processed to determine valid identification of the individual present at the portal.
17. Upon authentication of the credentials or information presented, the local processor shall automatically check privileges of the identified individual, allowing only those actions granted as privileges.
18. Privileges shall include, but are not limited to, time of day control, day of week control, group control, and visitor escort control. The local processor shall maintain a date-time- and location-stamped record of each transaction.
19. Transaction is defined as any successful or unsuccessful attempt to gain access through a controlled portal by the presentation of credentials or other identifying information.
20. Local processor outputs shall reflect the state of commands issued by the central station.
21. Outputs shall be a form C contact and shall include normally open and normally closed contacts.
22. Local processor shall have at least four addressable outputs.
23. The entry-control local processor shall also provide control outputs to portal-control devices.
24. Local processor shall be able to communicate with the central station via RS-485 or TCP/IP as a minimum.
25. The system manufacturer shall provide strategies for downloading database information for panel configurations and cardholder data to minimize the required download time when using IP connectivity.

2.14 REAL-TIME GUARD TOUR

- A. Guard tour module shall provide the ability to plan, track, and route tours. Module shall input an alarm during tour if guard fails to make a station. Tours can be programmed for sequential or random tour-station order.
 1. Guard tour setup shall define specific routes or tours for the guard to take, with time restrictions in which to reach every predefined tour station.
 2. Guard tour activity shall be automatically logged to the central-station workstation's hard drive.
 3. If the guard is early or late to a tour station, a unique alarm per station shall appear at the central station to indicate the time and station.
 4. Guard tour setup shall allow the tours to be executed sequentially or in a random order with an overall time limit set for the entire tour instead of individual times for each tour station.
 5. Setup shall allow recording of predefined responses that will display for the operator at the control station should a "Failed to Check In" alarm occur.
- B. Guard tour module shall allow proprietary direct-connected systems to use security access-control hardware to perform guard tour management in real time.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- C. A tour station is a physical location where a guard shall go and perform an action indicating that he or she has arrived. This action, performed at the tour station, shall be one of 13 different events with any combination of station types within the same tour. An event at a tour station shall be one of the following types:
 - 1. Access Granted.
 - 2. Access Denied Code.
 - 3. Access Denied Card plus PIN.
 - 4. Access Denied Time Zone.
 - 5. Access Denied Level.
 - 6. Access Denied Facility.
 - 7. Access Denied Code Timer.
 - 8. Access Denied Anti-Passback.
 - 9. Access Granted Passback Violation.
 - 10. Alarm.
 - 11. Restored.
 - 12. Input Normal.
 - 13. Input Abnormal.
- D. Guard tour and other system features shall operate simultaneously with no interference.
- E. Guard Tour Module Capacity: 999 possible guard tour definitions with each tour having up to 99 tour stations. System shall allow all 999 tours to be running at the same time.

2.15 TRANSFORMERS

- A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for control cable and conduit systems to network controllers, node controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
- C. Examine available network capacity and support infrastructure. Consult with network administrator for compliance with network standards and capacity.
- D. Examine install location for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to safe system operation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- E. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."
- C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.
 - 1. Define SMS partitions.
 - 2. Record setup data for network controller.
 - 3. For each Location, record setup of controller features and access requirements.
 - 4. Propose start and stop times for time zones and holidays, and match up access levels for doors.
 - 5. Set up groups, facility codes, linking, and list inputs and outputs for each controller.
 - 6. Assign action message names and compose messages.
 - 7. Set up alarms. Establish interlocks between alarms, intruder detection, and video surveillance features.
 - 8. Prepare and install alarm graphic maps.
 - 9. Develop user-defined fields.
 - 10. Develop screen layout formats.
 - 11. Propose setups for guard tours and key control.
 - 12. Discuss badge layout options; design badges.
 - 13. Complete system diagnostics and operation verification.
 - 14. Prepare a specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration.
 - 15. Develop acceptance test concept and, on approval, develop specifics of the test.
 - 16. Develop cable and asset-management system details; input data from construction documents. Include system schematics and Technical Drawings in electronic format.
- D. In meetings with Engineer and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Division 27 and with TIA 606-B.
- B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
- C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - 1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.
- D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.04 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

- A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.
- B. Assign the software license(s) to Owner.

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- C. All default passwords shall be changed to those selected by the Owner.
 - 1. The contractor shall retain no records of passwords for the project.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Confirm that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Configure and pretest system components, wiring, and functions to confirm that they comply with specified requirements.
 - 3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements.
 - 4. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 - 5. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to confirm that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- C. The system is considered defective and the project incomplete if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.07 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Check cable connections.
 - 2. Confirm system configuration and adjust settings needed.
 - 3. Recommend changes to system to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 - 4. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system.
- B. Develop separate training modules for the following:
 - 1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
 - 2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the network-connected PC with a browser and to enroll personnel.
 - 3. Security personnel.
 - 4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
 - 5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION 281300

SECTION 281300 - ACCESS CONTROL SOFTWARE AND DATABASE MANAGEMENT (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Proximity card readers, credential cards, and keypads
 - 2. Cables
 - 3. Transformers

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Credential: Data assigned to an entity and used to identify that entity.
- B. DTS: Digital Termination Service. A microwave-based, line-of-sight communication provided directly to the end user.
- C. Identifier: A credential card; keypad personal identification number; or code, biometric characteristic, or other unique identification entered as data into the entry-control database for the purpose of identifying an individual. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- D. Location: A Location on the TCP/IP network having a network-to-node controller communications link. Where this term is presented with an initial capital letter, this definition applies.
- E. Network Controller: Top tier of network-enabled architecture connected by a TCP/IP network and manageable from any network-connected PC with a browser.
- F. Node Controller: Field-installed controller at each Location connected to the system's inputs, outputs, and readers that manages access control decisions with data provided by the Network Controller.
- G. PC: Personal computer. Applies to the central station, workstations, and file servers.
- H. RAS: Remote access services.
- I. RF: Radio frequency.
- J. ROM: Read-only memory. ROM data are maintained through losses of power.
- K. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- L. TWAIN: Technology without an Interesting Name. A programming interface that lets a graphics application, such as an image editing program or desktop publishing program, activate a scanner, frame grabber, or other image-capturing device.
- M. WMP: Windows media player.
- N. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.
- O. WYSIWYG: What You See Is What You Get. Text and graphics appear on the screen the same as they will in print.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Diagrams for cable management system.
 - 2. System labeling schedules, including electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cable and asset identification system of the software specified in Parts 2 and 3.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams. For power, signal, and control wiring. Show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Workstation outlets, jacks, and jack assemblies.
 - b. Patch cords.
 - c. Patch panels.
 - 4. Cable Administration Drawings: As specified in "Identification" Article.
 - 5. Battery and charger calculations for central station, workstations, and controllers.
- C. Product Schedules.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data" and Section 280100 "General Provisions for Electronic Safety and Security", include the following:
 - 1. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on USB media of the hard-copy submittal.
 - 2. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Credential card blanks, ready for printing. Include enough credential cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
 - 2. Sticker tag blanks, ready for printing. Include enough sticker cards for all personnel to be enrolled at the site plus an extra 50 percent for future use.
 - 3. Fuses of all kinds, power and electronic, equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size used, but no fewer than three units.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Cable installer must have on staff an RCDD certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain central station, workstations, controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between **50 and 85 deg F (10 and 30 deg C)**, and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
- B. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.
- C. Mark packing list with the same designations assigned to materials and equipment for recording in the system labeling schedules that are generated by software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article.
- D. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
 - 1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **60 to 85 deg F (16 to 30 deg C)** and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 - 2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 - 3. Indoor, Uncontrolled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosures. System components installed in non-temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
 - 4. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4 enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of **minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to **85 mph (137 km/h)**.
 - 5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
 - 6. Corrosive Environment: For system components subjected to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones, provide NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 OPERATION

- A. Security access system hardware shall use a single database for access-control and credential-creation functions.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

- B. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

2.03 PROXIMITY CARD READERS, CREDENTIAL CARDS AND FOBS, AND KEYPADS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Allegion; Multi-Technology Readers
 2. Honeywell: OmniProx.
 3. HID; Proximity Card Readers
- B. Card-Reader Power: Powered from its associated controller, including its standby power source, and shall not dissipate more than 5 W.
- C. Response Time: Card reader shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal that is sent to the controller. Response time shall be 800 ms or less, from the time the card reader finishes reading the credential card until a response signal is generated.
- D. Enclosure: Suitable for surface, semi-flush, pedestal, or weatherproof mounting. Mounting types shall additionally be suitable for installation in the following locations:
1. Indoors, controlled environment.
 2. Indoors, uncontrolled environment.
 3. Outdoors, with built-in heaters or other cold-weather equipment to extend the operating temperature range as needed for operation at the site.
- E. Display: Digital visual indicator shall provide visible and audible status indications and user prompts. Indicate power on or off, whether user passage requests have been accepted or rejected, and whether the door is locked or unlocked.
- F. Touch-Plate and Proximity Readers:
1. Active-detection proximity card readers shall provide power to compatible credential cards through magnetic induction, and shall receive and decode a unique identification code number transmitted from the credential card.
 2. The card reader shall read proximity cards in a range from direct contact to at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from the reader.
- G. Keypad and Proximity Reader Combination: Designed to require an entry on the keypad before presenting the credential card.
1. Keypad: Allow the entry of four numeric digits that are associated with a specific credential. Keypads shall contain an integral alphanumeric/special symbol keyboard with symbols arranged in ascending ASCII-code ordinal sequence. Keypad display or enclosure shall limit viewing angles of the keypad as follows:
 - a. Maximum Horizontal Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 5 degrees or less off a vertical plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
 - b. Maximum Vertical Viewing Angle: Plus or minus 15 degrees or less off a horizontal plane perpendicular to the plane of the face of the keypad display.
 2. Keypads shall provide a means for users to indicate a duress situation by entering a special code.
- H. Communication Protocol: Compatible with local processor.
- I. Touch-Plate and Contactless Card Reader: The reader shall have "flash" download capability to accommodate card format changes. The card reader shall have capability of transmitting data to security control panel and shall comply with ISO/IEC 7816.

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

- J. Credentials: Proximity card technology with photo identification capability on a single access control card.
 - 1. Card Size and Dimensional Stability: Credential cards shall be 2-1/8 by 3-3/8 inches (54 by 86 mm). The credential card material shall be dimensionally stable so that an undamaged card with deformations resulting from normal use shall be readable by the card reader.
 - 2. Card Material: Abrasion resistant, nonflammable, nontoxic, and impervious to solar radiation and effects of ultraviolet light.
 - 3. Card Construction:
 - a. Core and laminate or monolithic construction.
 - b. Lettering, logos, and other markings shall be hot stamped into the credential material or direct printed.
 - c. Furnish equipment for on-site assembly and lamination of credential cards.

2.04 CABLES

- A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Division 26 and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement.
- B. Plenum-Rated TIA 232-F Cables:
 - 1. Three, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PE insulation.
 - 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Plenum-Rated TIA 485-A Cables:
 - 1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. NFPA 70 Type: Type CMP
 - 6. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- D. Paired, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:
 - 1. Three pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, individual aluminum-foil/polypropylene-tape shielded pairs each with No. 22 AWG, stranded tinned copper drain wire, 100 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
 - 2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.
- E. Multiconductor, Plenum-Type, Reader and Wiegand Keypad Cables:
 - 1. Six conductors, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned copper conductors, fluorinated-ethylene-propylene insulation, overall aluminum-foil/polyester-tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage plus tinned copper braid shield with 85 percent shield coverage, and fluorinated-ethylene-propylene jacket.
 - 2. NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 3. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262 flame test.

- F. LAN Cabling:

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

1. Comply with requirements in Division 27.

2.05 TRANSFORMERS

- A. NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for security access-control system shall not be shared with any other system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.
- B. Comply with TIA 606-B, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."
- C. Product Schedules: Obtain detailed product schedules from manufacturer of access-control system or develop product schedules to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Product Schedules for review and approval.
- D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Product Schedules and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use approved, final Product Schedules to set up system software.

3.03 CABLING

- A. See "Responsibility Matrix for Technology and Electronic Safety" on Drawings for requirements of pathways and wiring.
- B. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."
- C. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Division 26.
- D. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway and cable tray except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- E. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5e rating of components and optical fiber rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and optical fiber performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
- F. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.

- G. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.04 CABLE APPLICATION

- A. Comply with TIA 569-D, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."
- B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.
- C. TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of **50 ft. (15 m)** between terminations.
- D. TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of **4000 ft. (1220 m)** between terminations.
- E. Proximity Card Readers and Keypads:
 - 1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified.
 - 2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is **250 ft. (75 m)**, and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is **500 ft. (150 m)**.
 - 3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.
 - 4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.
- F. Install minimum No. 16 AWG cable from controller to electrically powered locks. Do not exceed **250 ft. (75 m)** between terminations.
- G. Install minimum No. 18 AWG ac power wire from transformer to controller, with a maximum distance of **25 ft. (8 m)** between terminations.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with Division 26 and Division 27.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."
- C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.
- E. Signal Ground:
 - 1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
 - 2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
 - 3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.06 INSTALLATION

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

- A. Install card readers, long range control readers, and keypads.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements in Division 27.
- B. Using software specified in "Cable and Asset Management Software" Article, develop cable administration drawings for system identification, testing, and management. Use unique, alphanumeric designation for each cable, and label cable and jacks, connectors, and terminals to which it connects with the same designation. Use logical and systematic designations for facility's architectural arrangement.
- C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - 1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.
 - 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.
- D. At completion, cable and asset management software shall reflect as-built conditions.

3.08 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

- A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform database tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license to Owner.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use tester approved for type and kind of installed cable. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to TIA 568-C.1, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for balanced twisted-pair cables must comply with minimum criteria in TIA 568-C.1.
 - 2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.
 - 3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.
- C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

3.10 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Enroll and prepare badges and access cards for Owner's operators, management, and security personnel.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain security access system. See Division 01 and Section 280100 "General Provisions for Electronic Safety and Security".
- B. Develop separate training modules for the following:
 - 1. Computer system administration personnel to manage and repair the LAN and databases and to update and maintain software.
 - 2. Operators who prepare and input credentials to man the control station and workstations and to enroll personnel.
 - 3. Security personnel.
 - 4. Hardware maintenance personnel.
 - 5. Corporate management.

END OF SECTION 281500

SECTION 281500 - ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE DEVICES (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of digital video recorder, data transmission wiring, and a control station with its associated equipment.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. API: Application Programming Interface
- B. AVI: Audio Video Interleave
- C. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- D. IP: Internet protocol.
- E. LAN: Local area network.
- F. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- G. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- H. NVR: Network Video Recorder
- I. PC: Personal computer.
- J. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- K. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- L. RAM: Random Access Memory
- M. SMS: Security Management System
- N. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- O. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- P. USB: Universal Serial Bus
- Q. VMS: Video Management System
- R. WAN: Wide area network.
- S. WDR: Wide Dynamic Range

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, software versions, operating system details, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types, quantities, and sizes.
 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
 6. Data Calculations: Provide VMS bandwidth and storage calculations meeting minimum project requirements as described herein.
 7. System integration plans.
- C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.
- D. Equipment and Software List: Include every piece of equipment and software by product/model name and/or number, manufacturer, serial number, revision number, location, and date of original installation. If factory and/or bench testing regimens are required by the project plan, add pretesting record of each piece of equipment and software, listing name of person testing, date of test, and adjustments made.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, audio interfaces, and infrared illuminators, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data" and in Section 280100 "General Provisions for Electronic Safety and Security," include the following:
1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
1. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installation shall comply with federal, state, and local codes and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- B. All software and hardware shall be programmed and installed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.
- C. All equipment shall be new, in current production, and the standard products of a manufacturer of ESS equipment.
- D. The manufacturer shall guarantee availability of parts, for a minimum of seven (7) years from date of shipment.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

- E. On-site maintenance and repair service shall be available locally and within four (4) hours of notification of condition.
- F. Software integration between all integrated systems shall be tested and certified for interoperability by the manufacturer of each system.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approved Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. ExacqVision: Enterprise VMS
 - 2. Genetec: Omnicast
 - 3. Hanwha Techwin: Wisenet WAVE
 - 4. Honeywell: ProWatch
 - 5. Lenel S2: VRx Enterprise
 - 6. Panasonic: WV-ASM300

2.02 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
 - 1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Division 26.
 - 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 26 as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled.

2.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

- D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.04 VIDEO MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. Description:

1. The VMS shall be a software package for comprehensive management of live and recorded IP-based video, and associated audio and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
2. The VMS shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.

B. General Functionality:

1. Provide effective monitoring of video from IP cameras and encoding devices, two-way audio and data in real time over local and wide area networks.
2. Interactive and multi-level mapping.
3. Data integration from retail and access control systems.
4. Single-screen administration across multiple servers and systems, including:
 - a. Global configuration and monitoring of camera, encoder, and storage settings across the enterprise.
 - b. Administration of all users on multiple servers.
 - c. E-mail and text (SMS) notifications.
5. Automatic identification and IP address assignment of compatible IP cameras and encoders with status display.
 - a. The option to enable an embedded DHCP server to assign camera addresses via DHCP.
6. Open architecture supporting IP cameras and encoders and access control systems from multiple manufacturers.
7. Available client software to allow remote access to live and recorded video, including access from mobile devices.
 - a. Support simultaneous access to video from multiple servers.
8. Virtual matrix functionality.
9. Provisioned as a service without requiring any application to be running in order to operate.
10. 2-way audio support between server, client, and camera.

C. Architecture

1. The VMS shall have a client/server-based architecture that can be configured as a standalone VMS with the client software running with equal functionality on the server hardware and/or the client running on any network-connected TCP/IP workstation.
2. User Interfaces – The VMS shall support installed client and web client interfaces.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. The VMS shall record and retrieve video, audio and alarm data and provide it to the VMS clients upon request.
 - b. Installed client characteristics:
 - 1) Downloadable at no charge from the Manufacturer's web site.
 - 2) Fully compatibility with all available features of the VMS server software.
 - 3) View live video and audio, recorded video and audio and be able to configure the complete system all from a single application.
 - 4) Add and remove features based on the permissions of the user and the licensed functionality.
 - c. PC Web Client - The web client interface shall operate without requiring installation of any software.
 - 1) Functions:
 - a) View live video.
 - b) View recorded video.
 - c) Control pan-tilt zoom (PTZ) cameras.
 - d) Activate triggers
 - e) Allow connections to multiple VMS servers simultaneously
 - 2) The VMS server shall be able to transcode video into a JPEG file sized for compatibility with the browser screen before sending it to the client browser.
 - 3) The web client shall be capable of decoding JPEG and H.264 and H.265 video streams.
 - d. The VMS software shall allow the user to have any combination of VMS client applications running on any of the supported operating systems and be able to connect to any of the VMS servers running on any of the supported operating systems.
 - 1) Multiple client workstations shall be capable of simultaneously viewing live and/or recorded video from one or more servers.
 - e. The VMS software shall have the capability to run multiple client applications simultaneously on one workstation with multiple monitors.
 - 1) Up to 12 monitors shall be configurable on a single workstation with one (1) client application running on each monitor.
 - f. Multiple servers shall be able to simultaneously provide live and/or recorded video to one or more workstations.
 - g. The VMS server software shall have the ability to be installed on an IP edge device, such as an IP camera or encoder that allows for third-party applications, allowing the device to serve as both a server and IP video recording device.
- D. Compatibility / Integration: The VMS shall be compatible with the provided access control system for system integration.
- E. Server Requirements:
- 1. Operating System: Microsoft Windows
 - 2. Network Interface: 1000BASE-T Ethernet
- F. Acceptable Web Browsers:
- 1. PC: Internet Explorer, Firefox, Safari, Opera, Chrome, all non-JavaScript browsers.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

2. HTML Compliance: HTML 4.0

2.05 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

- A. Description: The Network Video Recorder (NVR) supports simultaneous recording, remote viewing and search, and system management for IP cameras including high-definition formats. Multiple NVRs may be deployed for system expansion using a distributed architecture and integrated with the multi-site software or enterprise video management system.
- B. Components:
 1. NVR Server: Contains the recording engine, database of all network-connected cameras and encoders, integrated components and their configurations. Server shall be provided as a combined hardware and software device.
- C. Hardware: NVR Server shall operate with no performance degradation using the following minimum hardware.
 1. Rackmount, 2U or 4U with multiple hard drives.
 2. Memory: 8 GB RAM.
 3. Power Supplies: Dual redundant.
 4. Operating System Drives: RAID 1 support.
 5. Storage Capacities:
 - a. Provide storage capacity calculated at 25 FPS per camera for 14 days with 20% spare capacity allowance.
 - b. Video storage redundancy with RAID 5 support.
 6. Video Storage Hard Drives: Multiple field-upgradable.
 7. Network Interface: Dual 1 GB Ethernet.
 8. Supported Devices: Capable of supporting all IP cameras with 20% spare IP inputs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine available network capacity and support infrastructure. Consult with network administrator for compliance with network standards and capacity
- C. Examine install location for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to safe system operation, and other conditions affecting installation
- D. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Prior to beginning system programming, prepare detailed project planning forms for programming and configuration of the system. Fill in all data available from project plans and specifications and publish as project planning documents for review and approval. These may include (but are not limited to):
 - 1. Define user (operator) types.
 - 2. Define camera naming schema.
 - 3. Determine storage requirements.
 - 4. Determine FPS requirements.
 - 5. Determine motion recording.
 - 6. Define event programming
 - 7. Develop matrix layouts
 - 8. Prepare a project specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration
 - 9. Develop cable and asset-management system labeling plan
- B. In meetings with Owner, present Project planning documents and review, adjust, and prepare final programming and configuration documents. Use final documents to program and configure software.

3.03 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

- A. Develop, install, and test software and hardware, and perform tests for the complete and proper operation of systems involved.
- B. Assign the software license(s) to Owner.
- C. All default passwords shall be changed to those selected by the Owner.
 - 1. The contractor shall retain no records of passwords for the project.

3.04 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Configure and pretest VMS components, wiring, and functions to confirm that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list
 - b. Confirm operation of all camera streams and check data storage configuration.

SECTION 282300 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CONTROL AND MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (continued):

- c. Confirm operation of all third-party integrated components and systems
 - d. Set and name all camera streams and preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - e. Confirm operation of monitoring equipment.
- 3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
- 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- D. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Check cable connections.
 - 2. Check proper operation of camera streams and storage retention.
 - 3. Confirm system configuration and adjust settings needed.
 - 4. Recommend changes to system to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 - 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 282300

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras and mounting equipment.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. B/W: Black and white.
- D. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- E. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- F. IP: Internet protocol.
- G. LAN: Local area network.
- H. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- I. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- J. PC: Personal computer.
- K. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- L. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- M. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- N. WAN: Wide area network.
- O. WDR: Wide Dynamic Range

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

- C. Design Data: Include an equipment list consisting of every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, audio interfaces, and infrared illuminators, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data" and in Section 280100 "General Provisions for Electronic Safety and Security," include the following:

1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **60 to 85 deg F (16 to 29 deg C)** and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
3. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non- temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **0 to 122 deg F (minus 18 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosures.
4. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of **minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C)** dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to **85 mph (137 km/h)**. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4 enclosures.
5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
6. Corrosive Environment: System components subject to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
7. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

2.01 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.
- B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
 - 1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Division 26.
 - 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 26 as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.
- C. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station, control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

2.03 NETWORK (IP) CAMERAS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. [Axis Communications.](#)
 - 2. [Bosch Security Systems, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Hanwha Techwin.](#)
 - 4. [Panasonic \(iPro\).](#)
- B. Casing:
 - 1. Vandal Protection (where indicated on schedules): IK08.
 - 2. Dustproof.
 - 3. Waterproof (where indicated on schedules).
- C. Camera:
 - 1. Imager: Progressive scan RGB CMOS.
 - 2. Lens: Fixed or varifocal. (See schedules for lens type and angle of view.)
 - 3. Integral infrared illumination.
 - 4. Sensitivity: Camera shall provide usable images in low-light conditions, delivering an image at a scene illumination of 0.20 lux at 50 IRE.

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

D. Video:

1. Compression and Transmission: H.265, H2.64, and MJPEG compression, each derived from a dedicated encoder and capable of being streamed independently and simultaneously.
2. Resolution: See schedules.
3. Frame Rate: See schedules.
4. Digital Pan/Tilt/Zoom: See schedules.
5. Image Settings / Features:
 - a. Day / night settings
 - b. Backlight compensation (BLC)
 - c. Wide dynamic resolution (WDR)
 - d. Motion detection
 - e. Privacy masking
 - f. White balance
 - g. Exposure control (including automatic gain control)
 - h. Image mirror
 - i. Image flip
 - j. Rotation: 0°, 90°, 180°, 270°, including corridor formatting
6. Storage:
 - a. RAM: 512 MB.
 - b. Onboard SD card.
 - c. Network Attached Storage (NAS).

E. Audio: Where required per schedule, provide two-way audio with built-in omnidirectional microphone. Two-way audio shall be provided by either:

1. Integral to camera.
2. External audio interface with input/output ports for remote mounting.
 - a. Electrical: Power over Ethernet (PoE), IEEE 802.3af/802.3at Type 1, Class 2 or 3.
 - b. Provide single stream for audio and video.

F. Network:

1. Connectivity: 10/100 Base-T Ethernet via RJ-45 connector.
2. Security:
 - a. Password protection
 - b. IP address filtering
 - c. HTTPS (SSL) encryption
 - d. Digest login authentication
 - e. User access log
 - f. IEEE 802.1x authentication
3. Supported protocols
 - a. Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), Internet Protocol (IP) v4 and v6, User Datagram Protocol (UDP)
 - b. Configuration: Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)
 - c. Web services: Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), Secure HTTP (HTTPS)
 - d. Network services: Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), Bonjour, Domain Name System (DNS), Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP), Network Time Protocol (NTP), Protocol Independent Multicast-Sparse Mode (PIM-SM), Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP v1/2c/3 – MIB-2), Universal Plug and Play (UPnP)

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

- e. Media: Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP), Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP), Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP)
 - f. Multicast: Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)
 - g. Notifications: File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)
- G. Electrical: Power over Ethernet (PoE), IEEE 802.3af/802.3at Type 1, Class 1 or 3.
- H. Software:
 - 1. Built-in web server which supports browser-based configuration using Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox, and Apple Safari from a PC or Mac.
 - 2. Monitoring screen which displays live video and simultaneously provides same-screen access for the following functions:
 - a. Live view window size
 - b. Resolution setting
 - c. Image (snapshot) capture
 - d. Manual recording to SD or NAS
 - e. Audio/microphone control
 - f. Access recorded data playback and camera configuration menus
 - g. Digital PTZ
 - 3. Playback screen which provides the following functions:
 - a. Recorded data search using date and time range
 - b. Recorded data search using event type
 - c. Play a recorded video by event triggering
 - d. Set resolution
 - e. Play audio if present
 - f. Generate a backup copy of saved video data
 - 4. Setup screen which provides access to configuration settings and functions in the camera.

2.04 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Axis Communications.
 - 2. Bosch Security Systems, Inc.
 - 3. Hanwha Techwin.
 - 4. Pelco.
 - 5. Panasonic (iPro).
 - 6. Tyco Security Products; Johnson Controls.
- B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- C. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 WIRING

- A. See "Responsibility Matrix for Technology and Electronic Safety" on Drawings for requirements of pathways and wiring.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 27.
- C. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
 - 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
 - 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- F. For communication wiring, comply with requirements in Division 27.
- G. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.03 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install cameras and infrared illuminators level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with ~~84-inch~~ (2134-mm-) minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.
- C. Set pan unit and pan-and-tilt unit stops to suit final camera position and to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.
- D. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.
- F. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.
 - 1. For 12- and 24-V dc cameras, connect the coaxial cable shields only at the monitor end.
- G. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Division 27.

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
 - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
 - c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
 - d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object **50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m)** away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
 - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
 - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
 - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
 - 3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 - 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- C. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Check cable connections.
 - 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
 - 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
 - 5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

SECTION 282500 - SURVEILLANCE DEVICES (continued):

3.06 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 282500

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 28 Specification Sections.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes basic requirements for electronic safety and security systems.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, “experienced” unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Furnish: Supply and deliver to project site, ready for subsequent requirements.
- C. Install: Operations at project site, including unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar requirements.
- D. Provide: Furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use.
- E. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- F. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.
- G. Concealed Work: Work hidden from view, including inside chases, furred spaces, or above ceilings.
- H. Exposed Work: Work open to view, including inside mechanical and equipment rooms .

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General:
 - 1. It is the intent of the plans and specifications to obtain a complete, operable and satisfactory installation.
 - 2. All materials shall be new, be properly labeled and/or identified and be in full compliance with the contract documents.
 - 3. All work shall comply with applicable Codes and Standards.
 - 4. Manufacturer's model names and numbers used in these specifications are subject to change per manufacturer's action. Contractor shall therefore verify them with manufacturer's representative before ordering any product or equipment

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment manufactured in the U.S.A. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required provide units of a single manufacturer.

1.05 CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Perform work in accordance with the following codes and any applicable statutes, ordinances, codes, and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Occupational Safety and Health Regulations (OSHA).
 2. National Fire Codes
 - a. NFPA 1 Fire Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - b. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code – 2020
 - c. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code - 2019
 - d. NFPA 75 Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment – 2020
 - e. NFPA 101 Life Safety Code – 2021 (Florida Edition)
 - f. NFPA 1221 Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems – 2020
 3. Florida Building Code, 2023 Edition
 - a. Building Code
 - b. Energy Conservation Code
 - c. Mechanical Code
 - d. Plumbing Code
 - e. Fuel Gas Code
 - f. Accessibility Code
 4. Florida Statutes
 - a. Chapter 471 Engineering
 - b. Chapter 533.80 Building Construction Standards; Florida Building Code - Enforcement
 5. Florida Administrative Code
 - a. Chapter 9B-7 Florida Building Commission Handicapped Accessibility Standards
 - b. Chapter 61G15-32 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Fire Protection Systems
 - c. Chapter 61G15-33 Responsibility Rules of Professional Engineers Concerning the Design of Electrical Systems
 - d. Chapter 69A-3 Fire Prevention – General Provisions
 - e. Chapter 69A-60 The Florida Fire Prevention Code
 6. ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings (ADAAG)
- B. Resolve, in writing, any code violation discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to bidding. After award of the contract, make any correction or addition necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to Owner.
- C. The Contractor shall include in the Work, without extra cost to the Owner, any labor, materials, services, apparatus, and drawings required to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations.
- D. Where there is conflict between the Contract Documents and the applicable Codes, the Codes shall govern, except where the requirements of the Contract Documents are more stringent.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

1.06 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

- A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or NEC Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments, or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where capacities, size or other feature of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet listed or shown capacities.
- B. Whenever a reference is made to a standard, installation and materials shall comply with the latest published edition of the standard at the time project is bid unless otherwise specified herein

1.07 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.08 PERMITS FEES AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Obtain and pay for all permits, fees, tap fees, connection charges, demand charges, systems charges, impact fees, and inspections.
- B. Deliver all certificates of inspection issued by authorities having jurisdiction to the Engineer.

1.09 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Engineer for direction before proceeding.
 - 1. If discrepancies or conflicts occur between drawings, or between drawings and specifications, notify the Engineer in writing prior to bid date; however, the most stringent requirement shall govern.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Engineer for a decision before proceeding.

1.10 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Engineer will return without response those RFIs submitted to Engineer by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Prepare RFIs as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
- C. Engineer's Action: Engineer will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Engineer's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 - 1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Engineer's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 - 2. Engineer's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Engineer's time for response will date from time of receipt by Engineer of additional information.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals (including Product Data, Shop Drawings, and any other Action Submittal or Information Submittal) will only be reviewed if they are submitted in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 - 1. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by the Engineer.
 - 3. Submittals shall only contain relevant product data. Remove or strikeout irrelevant product data.
 - 4. Prepare submittals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. **All electronic files shall ONLY be transmitted to inbox@h2engineering.com and shall not be transmitted to any individual email addresses for H2Engineering personnel.** Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.
 - 5. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Engineer.
 - 6. Deviations: Clearly identify deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations.
 - 7. Revisions: Include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those specifically requested by Engineer on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached submittal sheet.
 - 8. Contractor's Review:
 - a. Submittals shall have been reviewed and approved by the General Contractor / Construction Manager. Include approval stamp, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Engineer will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
 - 9. Electrical Modifications:

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- a. The electrical design indicated on the plans supports the Basis of Design specifications for the Fire Safety and Emergency Communications systems at the time of design.
 - b. If Fire Safety and Emergency Communications systems equipment is submitted with different electrical requirements, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to resolve all required electrical design changes, including, but not limited to: wire and conduit size, type or size of disconnect or overload protection, breaker coordination, point(s) of connection, etc. Any corrections required shall be provided at no additional cost.
 - c. Submittal shall clearly show the electrical design revisions with a written statement that this change will be provided at no additional cost. Submittals made with no written reference to the electrical design revisions will be presumed to work with the electrical design.
- B. Processing Time: Time of review shall commence on Engineer's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of the failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Allow not less than 15 days for submittal review. Allow not less than 21 days for review of large or complex submittals. Submittals received by Engineer after 1:00 p.m. Eastern Time will be considered as received the following working day.
 2. If Contractor transmits more than five submittals over two consecutive business days, review time shall increase by no less than 7 days for submittal review.
 3. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Engineer will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 4. Engineer reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received. Time of review shall commence on receipt of all other related submittals.
- C. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the contract documents by the Engineer's approval of shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Engineer in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal, and the Engineer has given written approval to the specific deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in shop drawings, product data, samples, or similar submittals by the Engineer's approval thereof.
- D. Submittal Review Fees:
1. Additional Reviews: Submittals on any particular phase of Work will receive only one review and one re-review (if required). If additional reviews are required beyond these two, the Contractor will be charged \$200.00 per hour for review time, in addition to any expedited review charges. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.
 2. Expedited Reviews: If General Contractor / Construction Manager requests for an expedited review, whether by official request or unofficially by assigning a review time less than required above, the General Contractor / Construction Manager will be charged \$1,000.00 per Submittal, in addition to any charges for additional reviews. This fee shall be paid to the Engineer prior to Submittal release.

1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS (NOT REQUIRED)

- A. Should the Contractor elect to provide Coordination Drawings when not expressly required by the Engineer, such Drawings shall be considered for informational purposes only. The Engineer will not conduct a review of these Drawings, and their submission or any implied approval shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligation to fully comply with the requirements set forth in the Construction Documents. The Contractor remains solely responsible for ensuring that all work meets the contract specifications and standards, regardless of the content or status of the Coordination Drawings.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

1.13 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. By submitting a bid, the Bidder represents that its bid is based on materials and equipment described in the Procurement and Contracting Documents, including Addenda. Bidders are encouraged to request approval of qualifying substitute materials and equipment when the Specifications Sections list materials and equipment by product or manufacturer name.
- B. Substitution Requests shall include, at a minimum:
 - 1. Statement indicating why specified material, equipment, or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - 2. Coordination of information, including a list of changes and revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - 3. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include an annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - 4. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - 5. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - 6. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - 7. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - 8. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- C. Procurement Substitution Requests submitted prior to receipt of bids will be received and considered by Owner when the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by Engineer; otherwise, requests will be returned without action:
 - 1. Requests for substitution of materials and equipment are received no later than 10 days prior to date of bid opening.
 - 2. Extensive revisions to the Contract Documents are not required.
 - 3. Proposed changes are in keeping with the general intent of the Contract Documents, including the level of quality of the Work represented by the requirements therein.
 - 4. The request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- D. Substitutions for Cause, as required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms will be received and considered by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - 1. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - 2. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - 3. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 5. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - 6. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

7. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- E. Substitutions for Convenience, not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner, will be received and considered by Owner, as determined by Engineer, only when the following conditions are satisfied; otherwise, requests will be returned without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Requested substitution is received within 60 days after the Notice of Award.
 2. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 3. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 4. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 5. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 8. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 9. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 10. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- F. If a requested substitution is approved but contains differences or omissions not specifically identified to the attention of the Engineer in the substitution request, the Owner reserves the right to require equal or similar features to be added to the substituted products or to have the substituted products replaced at the Contractor's expense.

1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of the Contract Documents and Shop Drawings during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation:
1. Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings:
 - a. Mark revisions to show where the actual installation varies from that shown originally.
 - b. Mark record sets completely and accurately, including important information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - c. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - d. Record underground and under-slab piping installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of piping.
 2. Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 3. Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Deliver: Prior to Final Completion, provide record documents to Owner as indicated below:

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

1. Record Drawings: Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
2. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
3. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
4. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Submit annotated PDF electronic files directories of each submittal.

1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare and submit a comprehensive manual of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials in full accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, and the following:
 1. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, including:
 - a. Information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - b. Manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventative maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, list of spare parts, and warranty information.
 2. Submit manuals as PDF electronic files and electronically transmit to Engineer through email or web-based project software site, in accordance with Division 01 Specification Sections. Submittals shall be in searchable PDF format and not a scanned copy.

1.16 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

- A. Prepare and provide services of qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not a part of a system in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, individual Specification Sections, and the following:
 1. Demonstration and training shall occur upon completion of the Work and at a time designated by the Owner's representative.
 2. Provide a high-resolution, digital video recording of each training session to the Owner.

1.17 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected in Division 01 "Product Requirements".

1.18 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty work and equipment within specified warranty period. During the warranty period, provide labor and materials to make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in materials or workmanship without expense to the Owner.
 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of Contract Documents.
- C. Owner reserves the right to make emergency repairs as required to keep equipment in operation without voiding Contractor's Guarantee Bond nor relieving the Contractor of responsibilities during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NONE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Examine all drawings and specifications carefully before submitting a bid. Architectural drawings take precedence over mechanical or electrical drawings with reference to building construction.
- B. For purposes of clearness and legibility, drawings are essentially diagrammatic and, although size and location of equipment are drawn to scale wherever possible, Contractor shall make use of all data in all of the contract documents and shall verify this information at the building site.
- C. The drawings indicate required size and points of termination of pipes, conduits, and ducts and suggest proper routes to conform to structure avoid obstructions and preserve clearances. However, it is not intended that drawings indicate all necessary offsets, and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the installation in such a manner as to conform to structure, avoid obstructions, preserve headroom and keep openings and passageways clear, without further instructions or cost to the Owner.
- D. Furnish, install and/or connect with appropriate services all items shown on any drawing without additional compensation.
- E. Any and all questions about a subcontractor's scope of work responsibility shall be addressed to and answered by the General Contractor / Construction Manager.
- F. Questions About Construction Documents: Any and all questions shall be submitted through the proper channels IN WRITING and, in turn, shall be answered by the Engineer in writing. All telephone conversations shall be considered unofficial and, as such, shall not be considered official or binding responses to Contractor's questions.
- G. Drawings, specifications, or other documents issued by the Engineer in electronic format and/or electronic media are provided for convenience only and are not intended for use as Contract Documents.
 - 1. The electronic files are provided merely as a convenience to the Recipient.
 - 2. The electronic files do not replace or supplement the paper copies of any drawings, specifications, or other documents included in the Contract Documents for use on the project.
 - 3. The Engineer makes no representation, warranty, or guarantee that electronic files:
 - a. Are suitable for any other usage or purpose.
 - b. Have any particular durability.
 - c. Will not damage or impair the Recipient's computer or software.
 - d. Contain no errors or mechanical flaws or other discrepancies that may render them unsuitable for the purpose intended by the Recipient.
 - 4. Due to the unsecured nature of the electronic files and the inability of Engineer or the Recipient to establish controls over their use, the Engineer assumes no responsibility for any consequences

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

arising out of the use of the data. It is the sole responsibility of the Recipient to check the validity of all information contained therein. The Recipient shall at all times refer to the signed and sealed drawings, specification or other documents for the project during all phases of the project. The Recipient shall assume all risks and liabilities resulting from the use of the electronic files.

3.02 SUPERVISION OF WORK

- A. Perform all work under the direct supervision of an experienced, qualified superintendent. The Engineer has the right to remove a superintendent who, in the Engineer's opinion, is not satisfactory.

3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Engineer.

3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials and equipment in a professional manner. The Engineer may direct replacement of items which, in the Engineer's opinion, do not present a professional appearance or do not allow adequate space for maintenance. Replace or reinstall items at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of **96 inches (2440 mm)** in occupied spaces and **90 inches (2300 mm)** in unoccupied spaces.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- F. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- G. Obstructions
 - 1. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
 - 2. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided. Verify locations given.
 - 3. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.
 - 4. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.
- H. Where "rated" walls, floor, roofs and ceilings are penetrated or cut to install equipment, materials, devices, etc. the Contractor shall provide and install all materials required to re-establish the rating of the wall, floor, roof, or ceiling to the satisfaction of the authority having jurisdiction.
- I. Structural Elements: Do not cut structural elements without written approval from Engineer. Notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. If approved by Engineer:
 - 1. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching.
 - 2. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- J. Space Requirements: Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material which is not suitable in this respect.
- K. Tools and Equipment: Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions without cost to the Owner.
- L. Phasing: Provide all temporary valves, piping, ductwork, equipment, and devices as required. Maintain temporary services to areas as required. Remove all temporary material and equipment on completion of work unless Engineer concurs that such material and equipment would be beneficial to the Owner on a permanent basis.

3.05 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.

3.06 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Engineer of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Engineer before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
- F. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- G. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
- H. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Engineer's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- I. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- J. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable or with in-place materials.
 - 1. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 2. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Engineer for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

- K. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.07 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements with General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01, Division 09, and individual Specification Sections.
- B. Touch-up factory finishes on equipment provided under Division 28. Obtain matched color coatings from the manufacturer and apply as directed. If corrosion is found during inspection on the surface of any equipment, clean, prime, and paint, as required.
- C. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - 1. Metal conduit
 - 2. Plastic conduit
- D. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - 1. Other items as directed by Engineer.

3.08 REPAIR OF WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - 2. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests
 - 1. Include all tests specified and/or required under laws, rules and regulations of all departments having jurisdiction. Tests shall also be performed as indicated herein and other sections of the specifications.

SECTION 290100 - GENERAL PROVISIONS FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

2. After all systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequence and operation throughout the range of operation. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems.
 3. All parts of the work and associated equipment shall be tested and adjusted to work properly and be left in perfect operating condition.
 4. Correct defects disclosed by these tests without any additional cost to the Owner. Repeat tests on repaired or replaced work.
 5. Maintain a log of all tests being conducted and have it available for review by the Engineer. Log to indicate date, type of tests, duration, and defects noted and when corrected.
 6. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual Specification Sections.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Progress Cleaning: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Final Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - b. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - c. Wipe surfaces of equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

END OF SECTION 290100

SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Balanced twisted pair cable hardware.
 - 3. RS-485 cable.
 - 4. Control cable.
 - 5. Control-circuit conductors.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: **60 inch (1520 mm)** or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.

2.02 CATEGORY 6 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6 cable at frequencies up to 250 MHz.
- B. Standard: Comply with NEMA WC 66/ICEA S-116-732 and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6 cables.
- C. Conductors: 100 ohm, No. 23 AWG solid copper.
- D. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP). Cable Rating: Plenum.
- E. Jacket: Red thermoplastic.

SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

2.03 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables must be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100 ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.

2.04 RS-232 CABLE

- A. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F:
 - 1. Nine, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PE insulation.
 - 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.05 RS-485 CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, one pair, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.06 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

2.07 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway .

2.08 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- B. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG in pathway.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- C. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 - 1. Control-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 2. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 - 1. Outlet boxes for cables must be no smaller than 4 inch (102 mm) square by 2-1/8 inch (53 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 - 2. Flexible metal conduit must not be used.
 - 3. Concealed and exposed junction boxes must be painted red enamel.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 - 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.

SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

3. Extend conduits **3 inch (75 mm)** above finished floor.
4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Install all cabling in raceway.
2. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
3. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
4. Terminate all conductors; cable must not contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
5. Cables may not be spliced and must be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
6. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
7. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inch (760 mm)** and not more than **6 inch (150 mm)** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
12. Ground wire must be copper, and grounding methods must comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install termination hardware as specified in Division 27 unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.

E. Installation of Fire Alarm Wiring and Cables:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.

F. Installation of Cables other than Fire Alarm Wiring:

1. Install wiring in raceways.

SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS (continued):

3.03 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.04 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.05 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For control-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers must use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire must have a unique tag.

END OF SECTION 290523

**SECTION 290523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE CABLES FOR FIRE SAFETY AND EMERGENCY
COMMUNICATIONS (continued):**

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Clean-agent systems.
2. Pipe and fittings.
3. Valves.
4. Extinguishing-agent containers.
5. Fire-extinguishing clean agent.
6. Discharge nozzles.
7. Manifold and orifice unions.
8. Fire control panels.
9. Detection devices.
10. Manual stations.
11. Switches.
12. Alarm devices.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. EPO: Emergency Power Off.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (hydraulic, air compressor sizing, etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, service mains, distribution lines, devices, equipment, sizing of pipe and/or circuits, hanger locations, and supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.
1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed engineer.
 2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed..
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 2. Include design calculations.
 3. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For clean-agent fire-extinguishing system signed.
 - 1. Indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data.
 - 2. Include design calculations for weight, volume, and concentration of extinguishing agent required for each hazard area.
 - 3. Indicate the Following on Reflected Ceiling Plans:
 - a. Ceiling penetrations and ceiling-mounted items.
 - b. Extinguishing-agent containers if mounted above floor, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - d. Other ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and access panels.
 - 4. Indicate the Following on Occupied Work Area Plans:
 - a. Controls and alarms.
 - b. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles if mounted in space, detectors, and accessories.
 - c. Equipment and furnishings.
 - 5. Indicate the Following on Access Floor Space Plans:
 - a. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - b. Method of supporting piping.
 - 6. Indicate the Following on Ceiling Plans:
 - a. Extinguishing-agent containers, piping and discharge nozzles, detectors, and accessories.
 - b. Method of supporting piping.
 - c. Other equipment located in the ceiling space that is being protected including sprinkler piping, HVAC equipment, raceways, or conduit.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Design Data:
 - 1. Permit Approved Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 2001, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction. Include design calculations.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For special agent system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
 - 1. Detection Devices: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
 - 2. Container Valves: Not less than 10 percent of amount of each size and type installed.

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Nozzles: Not less than 20 percent of amount of each type installed.
4. Extinguishing Agent: Not less than 100 percent of amount installed in largest hazard area. Include pressure-rated containers with valves.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. FM Global Compliance: Provide components that are FM Approved and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. UL Compliance: Provide equipment listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CLEAN-AGENT SYSTEMS

- A. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ansul Incorporated; SAPPHIRE® or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. [Ansul Incorporated.](#)
 2. [Kidde Fire Systems; a UTC Fire & Security company.](#)
 3. [Fike Corporation.](#)
 4. [Pem All Fire Extinguisher Corporation; a division of Pem Systems Inc.](#)
 5. [Pyro-Chem.](#)
 6. [Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.](#)
- B. Description: Clean-agent fire-extinguishing system shall be an engineered system for total flooding of the hazard area including the room cavity above the ceiling, below the ceiling, and below the raised floor. System includes separate zones above and below the ceiling and beneath the raised floor. If smoke is detected below the raised floor, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the underfloor zone only. If smoke is detected below the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in zones above and below the ceiling and below the floor. If smoke is detected above the ceiling, extinguishing agent shall be discharged in the zone above the ceiling only.
- C. Delegated Design: Design clean-agent fire-extinguishing system and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction. Design system for Class A, B, and C fires as appropriate for areas being protected, and include safety factor. Use clean agent indicated and in concentration suitable for normally occupied areas.
- D. Performance Requirements: Discharge FK-5-1-12 within 10 seconds and maintain 6.6 percent concentration by volume at **70 deg F (21 deg C)** for 10-minute holding time in hazard areas.
 1. FK-5-1-12 concentration in hazard areas greater than 10.0 percent immediately after discharge or less than 6.5 percent throughout holding time will not be accepted without written authorization from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. System Capabilities: Minimum **620-psig (4278-kPa)** calculated working pressure and **360-psig (2484-kPa)** initial charging pressure.
- E. Verified Detection: Devices located in single zone. Sound alarm on activating single-detection device, and discharge extinguishing agent on actuating second-detection device.
- F. System Operating Sequence:

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Actuating First Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (slow pulse), shut down air-conditioning and ventilating systems serving protected area, close doors in protected area, and send signal to fire-alarm system.
 2. Actuating Second Detector: Visual indication on annunciator panel. Energize audible and visual alarms (fast pulse), shut down power to protected equipment, start time delay for extinguishing-agent discharge for 30 seconds, and discharge extinguishing agent. On agent discharge, release preaction valve to allow water to fill sprinkler system.
 3. Extinguishing-agent discharge will operate audible alarms and strobe lights inside and outside the protected area.
- G. Manual stations shall immediately discharge extinguishing agent when activated.
- H. Operating abort switches will delay extinguishing-agent discharge while being activated, and switches must be reset to prevent agent discharge. Release of hand pressure on the switch will cause agent discharge if the time delay has expired.
- I. EPO: Will terminate power to protected equipment immediately on actuation.
- J. Low-Agent Pressure Switch: Initiate trouble alarm if sensing less than set pressure.
- K. Power Transfer Switch: Transfer from normal to stand-by power source.

2.02 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. See "FK-5-1-12 Agent Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Piping, Valves, and Discharge Nozzles: Comply with types and standards listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution," for charging pressure of system.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, Grade B or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade A; Schedule 40, Schedule 80, and Schedule 160, seamless steel pipe.
1. Threaded Fittings:
 - a. Malleable-Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 300.
 - b. Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 300 unless Class 600 is indicated.
 - c. Fittings Working Pressure: 620 psig (4278 kPa) minimum.
 - d. Flanged Joints: Class 300 minimum.
 2. Forged-Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.11, Class 3000, socket pattern.
 3. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: FM Approved and NRTL listed, ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 536 ductile iron, with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends factory grooved according to AWWA C606.
- D. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- E. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

- G. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213, AWWA C606, approved or listed for clean-agent service, and matching steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A 536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gasket, and steel bolts and nuts.

2.03 VALVES

- A. General Valve Requirements:
 - 1. UL listed or FM Approved for use in fire-protection systems.
 - 2. Compatible with type of clean agent used.
- B. Container Valves: With rupture disc or solenoid and manual-release lever, capable of immediate and total agent discharge and suitable for intended flow capacity.
- C. Valves in Sections of Closed Piping and Manifolds: Fabricate to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install valve and separate pressure relief device.
- D. Valves in Manifolds: Check valve; installed to prevent loss of extinguishing agent when container is removed from manifold.

2.04 EXTINGUISHING-AGENT CONTAINERS

- A. Description: Steel tanks complying with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, for unfired pressure vessels. Include minimum working-pressure rating that matches system charging pressure, valve, pressure switch, and pressure gage.
 - 1. Finish: Red, enamel or epoxy paint.
 - 2. Manifold: Fabricate with valves, pressure switches, and connections for multiple storage containers, as indicated.
 - 3. Storage-Tank Brackets: Factory- or field-fabricated retaining brackets consisting of steel straps and channels; suitable for container support, maintenance, and tank refilling or replacement.

2.05 FIRE-EXTINGUISHING CLEAN AGENT

- A. FK-5-1-12 Clean Agent: Dodecafluoro-2-methylpentan-3-one.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M.

2.06 DISCHARGE NOZZLES

- A. Equipment manufacturer's standard one-piece brass or aluminum alloy of type, size, discharge pattern, and capacity required for application.
- B. Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- C. Stamped with orifice size and type.

2.07 FIRE CONTROL PANELS

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, including equipment and features required for testing, supervising, and operating fire-extinguishing system.
- B. Power Requirements: 120/240-V ac; with electrical contacts for connection to system components and fire-alarm system, and transformer or rectifier as needed to produce power at voltage required for accessories and alarm devices.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1, enameled-steel cabinet.
 - 1. Mounting: Recessed flush with surface.
- D. Supervised Circuits: Separate circuits for each independent hazard area.
 - 1. Detection circuits equal to the required number of zones, or addressable devices assigned to the required number of zones.
 - 2. Manual pull-station circuit.
 - 3. Alarm circuit.
 - 4. Release circuit.
 - 5. Abort circuit.
 - 6. EPO circuit.
- E. Control-Panel Features:
 - 1. Electrical contacts for shutting down fans, activating dampers, and operating system electrical devices.
 - 2. Automatic switchover to standby power at loss of primary power.
 - 3. Storage container, low-pressure indicator.
 - 4. Service disconnects to interrupt system operation for maintenance with visual status indication on the annunciator panel.
- F. Annunciator Panel: Graphic type showing protected, hazard-area plans, as well as locations of detectors and abort, EPO, and manual stations. Include lamps to indicate device-initiating alarm, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, and stainless-steel or aluminum enclosure.
- G. Standby Power: Sealed lead calcium batteries with capacity to operate system for 24 hours and alarm for minimum of 15 minutes. Include automatic battery charger that has a varying charging rate between trickle and high depending on battery voltage, and that is capable of maintaining batteries fully charged. Include manual voltage control, dc voltmeter, dc ammeter, electrical contacts for connection to control panel, automatic transfer switch, and suitable enclosure.

2.08 DETECTION DEVICES

- A. General Requirements for Detection Devices:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 2001, NFPA 72, and UL 268.
 - 2. 24-V dc, nominal.
- B. Ionization Detectors: Dual-chamber type, having sampling and referencing chambers, with smoke-sensing element.
- C. Photoelectric Detectors: LED light source and silicon photodiode receiving element.
- D. Signals to the Central Fire Alarm Control Panel: Any type of local system trouble is reported to the central fire alarm control panel as a composite "trouble" signal. Alarms on each system zone are individually reported to the central fire alarm control panel as separately identified zones.

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

2.09 MANUAL STATIONS

- A. General Description: Surface FM Approved or NRTL listed, with clear plastic hinged cover, 120-V ac or low voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
- B. Manual Release: "MANUAL RELEASE" caption, and red finish. Unit can manually discharge extinguishing agent with operating device that remains engaged until unlocked.
- C. Abort Switch: "ABORT" caption, momentary contact, with green finish.
- D. EPO Switch: "EPO" caption, with yellow finish.

2.10 SWITCHES

- A. Description: FM Approved or NRTL listed, where available, 120-V ac or low voltage compatible with controls. Include contacts for connection to control panel.
 - 1. Low-Agent Pressure Switches: Pneumatic operation.
 - 2. Power Transfer Switches: Key-operation selector, for transfer of release circuit signal from main supply to reserve supply.
 - 3. Door Closers: Magnetic retaining and release device or electrical interlock to cause the door operator to drive the door closed.

2.11 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Description: Listed and labeled by an NRTL or FM Approved, low voltage, and surface mounting. Comply with requirements in Section 294621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for alarm and monitoring devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with hazard-area leakage requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting work performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 FK-5-1-12 AGENT PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanged pipe and fittings and flanged joints may be used to connect to specialties and accessories and where required for maintenance.
- B. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Schedule 40, steel pipe; malleable-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- C. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Schedule 40, steel pipe; forged-steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.03 CLEAN-AGENT PIPING INSTALLATION

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Install clean-agent extinguishing piping and other components level and plumb, according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install extinguishing-agent containers anchored to substrate.
- C. Install pipe and fittings, valves, and discharge nozzles according to requirements listed in NFPA 2001, Section "Distribution."
 - 1. Install valves designed to prevent entrapment of liquid, or install pressure relief devices in valved sections of piping systems.
 - 2. Support piping using supports and methods according to NFPA 13.
 - 3. Install control panels, detection system components, alarms, and accessories, complying with requirements of NFPA 2001, Section "Detection, Actuation, and Control Systems," as required for supervised system application.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect electrical devices to control panel and to building's fire-alarm system. Electrical power, wiring, and devices are specified in Section 294621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems".

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components and equipment. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26.
- B. Identify piping, extinguishing-agent containers, other equipment, and panels according to NFPA 2001.
- C. Install signs at entry doors for protected areas to warn occupants that they are entering a room protected with a clean-agent fire-extinguishing system.
- D. Install signs at entry doors to advise persons outside the room the meaning of the horn(s), bell(s), and strobe light(s) outside the protected space.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing clean-agent extinguishing piping system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Sections "Inspection and Test Procedures" and "System Function Tests." Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

- 5. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Each pipe section shall be cleaned internally after preparation and before assembly by means of swabbing, using a suitable nonflammable cleaner. Pipe network shall be free of particulate matter and oil residue before installing nozzles or discharge devices.

3.08 SYSTEM FILLING

- A. Preparation:
 - 1. Verify that piping system installation is completed and cleaned.
 - 2. Check for complete enclosure integrity.
 - 3. Check operation of ventilation and exhaust systems.
- B. Filling Procedures:
 - 1. Fill extinguishing-agent containers with extinguishing agent, and pressurize to indicated charging pressure.
 - 2. Install filled extinguishing-agent containers.
 - 3. Energize circuits.
 - 4. Adjust operating controls.

3.09 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems.

END OF SECTION 292200

SECTION 292200 - CLEAN-AGENT FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Addressable fire-alarm system.
2. Fire-alarm control unit (FACU).
3. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
4. System smoke detectors.
5. Duct smoke detectors.
6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
7. Heat detectors.
8. Multicriteria and multi-sensor fire detectors.
9. Fire-alarm notification appliances.
10. Fire-alarm remote annunciators.
11. Fire-alarm addressable interface devices.
12. Digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs).

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. CIS: Common Intelligibility Scale.
- B. DACT: Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
- C. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- D. ERCES: Emergency responder communications enhancement system.
- E. FACU: Fire-alarm control unit.
- F. FSCS: Firefighters' smoke control station.
- G. Mode: The terms "Active Mode," "Off Mode," and "Standby Mode" are used as defined in the 2007 Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA).
- H. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- I. PC: Personal computer.
- J. STI: Speech Transmission Index.
- K. STIPA: Speech Transmission Index – Public Address.
- L. Voltage Class: For specified circuits and equipment, voltage classes are defined as follows:
1. Control Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits supplied by a Class 2 or Class 3 power supply having rated output not greater than 150 V and 5 A, allowing use of alternate wiring methods complying with NFPA 70, Article 725.
 2. Low Voltage: Listed and labeled for use in circuits supplied by a Class 1 or other power supply having rated output not greater than 1000 V, requiring use of wiring methods complying with NFPA 70, Article 300, Part I.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Approved Permit Submittal: Submittals must be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Engineer.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details, including details of attachments to other Work.
 - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
 - 4. Graphic Annunciator panel details as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 5. Detail assembly and support requirements.
 - 6. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
 - 7. Include battery-size calculations.
 - 8. Include input/output matrix.
 - 9. Include written statement from manufacturer that equipment and components have been tested as a system and comply with requirements in this Section and in NFPA 72.
 - 10. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
 - 11. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 - 12. Provide program report showing that air-sampling detector pipe layout balances pneumatically within airflow range of air-sampling detector.
 - 13. Provide control wiring diagrams for fire-alarm interface to HVAC; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Locate detectors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 14. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 - 15. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data in conformance with Fire Protection System Layout Documents.
 - 1. Drawings showing location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of device.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
 - 3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.
- E. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Layout drawings, supporting calculations (battery calculations, voltage drop, spacing and sensitivity of detection, etc.), catalog information on standard products, and other construction data prepared by either a licensed contractor or a licensed Engineer that provides detail on the location of risers, distribution, devices, equipment, sizing of circuits, hanger locations, and

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

supporting calculations and also serves as a guide for fabrication and installation of a fire protection system. Fire Protection System Layout Documents are based upon engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection System Engineering Documents and require no additional engineering input.

1. If prepared by a licensed contractor, these documents do not require the seal of a licensed engineer.
2. If prepared by a licensed engineer, these documents are Engineering Documents and therefore require sealing by a licensed engineer.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 "Operation and Maintenance Data" and Section 290100 "General Provisions for Fire Safety and Emergency Communications include the following and deliver copies to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Comply with "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire-Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" in accordance with "Completion Documents" Article in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between devices and equipment. Each conductor must be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" in accordance with "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at FACU and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On USB media.
3. Device address list.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installation must be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II or greater technician.

1.06 WARRANTY

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail because of defects in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire alarm system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Fire Protection System Layout Documents: Engage either a licensed contractor or a qualified professional engineer to provide Fire Protection System Layout Documents for the fire alarm system based upon the engineering direction (performance requirements and design criteria) provided in the Fire Protection Engineering Documents.
 - 1. Fire alarm system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Margin of Safety for Available Secondary Power Supply Duration: 20 percent, above the calculated amp-hour capacity required at design system demand.
 - 1) Battery backup must provide 24 hours standby, followed by 5 minutes at maximum connected load, unless otherwise required by system types below.
 - 2) Supervising Station Facilities and Equipment: Battery backup must support operations for a minimum of 24 hours.
 - 3) Textual Visual Notification Appliances: Battery backup must provide 2 hours of continuous display during an emergency event.
 - 4) In-Building Mass Notification Systems: Battery backup must provide 24 hours standby, followed by 30 minutes at maximum connected load.

2.02 ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Honeywell International (Notifier).
 - 2. Honeywell International (Silent Knight).
 - 3. Siemens Industry, Inc., Building Technologies Division.
 - 4. Tyco International (Johnson Controls - SimplexGrinnell).
 - 5. Edwards Fire Safety (EST).
- B. Description:
 - 1. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice-and-strobe notification for evacuation.
- C. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Fire-Alarm Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a NRTL in accordance with NFPA 70 for use with selected fire-alarm system and marked for intended location and application.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

2. General Characteristics:

- a. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- b. Fire-alarm signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
 - 1) Manual stations.
 - 2) Heat detectors.
 - 3) Smoke detectors.
 - 4) Duct smoke detectors.
 - 5) Carbon monoxide detectors.
 - 6) Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- c. Fire-alarm signal must initiate the following actions:
 - 1) Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
 - 2) Identify alarm and specific initiating device at FACU and any connected network control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote annunciators.
 - 3) Transmit alarm signal to remote alarm receiving station.
 - 4) Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
 - 5) Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 - 6) Activate voice/alarm communication system.
 - 7) Switch HVAC equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
 - 8) Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 - 9) Activate emergency lighting control.
 - 10) Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies, except for shutoffs serving legally required life-safety systems such as emergency generators and fire pumps.
 - 11) Record events in system memory.
 - 12) Record events by system printer.
 - 13) Indicate device in alarm on graphic annunciator.
- d. Supervisory signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1) Valve supervisory switch.
 - 2) Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
 - 3) Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
 - 4) Zones or individual devices have been disabled.
 - 5) FACU has lost communication with network.
 - 6) ERCES status or alarm.
- e. System trouble signal initiation must be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1) Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 - 2) Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 - 3) Loss of communication with addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
 - 4) Loss of primary power at FACU.
 - 5) Ground or single break in internal circuits of FACU.
 - 6) Abnormal ac voltage at FACU.
 - 7) Break in standby battery circuitry.
 - 8) Failure of battery charging.
 - 9) Abnormal position of switch at FACU or annunciator.
 - 10) Voice signal amplifier failure.
- f. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- 1) Initiate notification appliances.
- 2) Identify specific device initiating event at FACU and any, connected network control panels, off-premises network control panels, and remote annunciators.
- 3) Record event on system printer.
- 4) After time delay of 200 seconds, transmit trouble or supervisory signal to remote alarm receiving station.

g. Network Communications:

- 1) Provide network communications for fire-alarm system in accordance with fire-alarm manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2) Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.

h. System Printer:

- 1) Printer must be listed and labeled as integral part of fire-alarm system.

i. Device Guards:

- 1) Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 - a) Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 - b) Finish: Paint of color to match protected device.

j. Document Storage Box:

- 1) Description: Enclosure to accommodate standard 8-1/2-by-11 inch (216-by-279 mm) manuals and loose document records. Legend sheet will be permanently attached to door for system required documentation, key contacts, and system information. Provide two key ring holders with location to mount standard business cards for key contact personnel.
- 2) Material and Finish: 18-gauge cold-rolled steel; four mounting holes.
- 3) Color: Red powder-coat epoxy finish.
- 4) Labeling: Permanently screened with 1 inch (25 mm) high lettering "SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS" with white indelible ink.
- 5) Security: Locked with 3/4 inch (19 mm) barrel lock. Provide solid 12 inch (304 mm) stainless steel piano hinge.

2.03 **FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT (FACU)**

A. Description: Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 72 and UL 864.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. System software and programs must be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include real-time clock for time annotation of events on event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between FACU and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. FACU must be listed for connection to central-station signaling system service.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. System must require no manual input to initialize in the event of complete power down condition. FACU must provide minimum 500-event history log.
- f. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: FACU must indicate which communication zones have been silenced and must provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 - 1) Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: FACU must be listed for releasing service.
- g. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at FACU and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and programming and control menu.
 - 1) Annunciator and Display: LCD, three line(s) of 80 characters, minimum.
 - 2) Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- h. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
 - 1) Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class A.
 - 2) Pathway Survivability: Level 1.
 - 3) Install no more than 256 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
 - 4) Install fault circuit isolators to comply with circuit performance requirements of NFPA 72 or with manufacturer's written instructions, whichever is more conservative.
- i. Serial Interfaces:
 - 1) One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.
 - 2) One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - 3) One USB or RS 232 port for PC configuration.
 - 4) One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- j. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
 - 1) Initiate audible and visible indication of "alarm-verification" signal at FACU.
 - 2) Activate approved "alarm-verification" sequence at FACU and detector.
 - 3) Record events by system printer.
 - 4) Sound general alarm if alarm is verified.
 - 5) Cancel FACU indication and system reset if alarm is not verified.
- k. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
 - 1) Audible appliances must sound in three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 - 2) Visual alarm appliances must flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- l. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls must select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out final adjusted values on system printer.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- m. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to remote alarm station.
- n. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as special module that is part of FACU.
- o. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of central-control microphone. Amplifiers must comply with UL 1711.
 - 1) Allow application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and simultaneously allow voice paging to other zones selectively or in combination.
 - 2) Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - 3) Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - 4) Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of FACU.
- p. Status Annunciator: Indicate status of various voice/alarm speaker zones and status of fire-fighters' two-way telephone communication zones.
- q. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators must automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- r. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from other printed indications. Also, print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate printing of list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in system and historical log of events.
- s. Primary Power: 24 V(dc) obtained from 120 V(ac) service and power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, and supervisory signals must be powered by 24 V(dc) source.
- t. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system must not exceed 80 percent of power-supply module rating.
- u. Secondary Power: 24 V(dc) supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
- v. Batteries: Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid.

C. Accessories:

- 1. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind plastic or glass cover in stainless steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe functional operation of system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.04 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes must be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; must show visible indication of operation; and must be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

- 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod or pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
- 3. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at top to permit lifting for access to initiate alarm.
- 4. Able to perform at up to 90 percent relative humidity at 90 deg F (32 deg C).

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

5. Able to be used in outdoor areas.

2.05 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Performance Criteria:

a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 1) NFPA 72.
- 2) UL 268.

b. General Characteristics:

- 1) Detectors must be two-wire type.
- 2) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- 3) Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components must be mounted in twist-lock module that connects to fixed base. Provide terminals in fixed base for connection to building wiring.
- 4) Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
- 5) Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
- 6) Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
- 7) Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a) Primary status.
 - b) Device type.
 - c) Present average value.
 - d) Present sensitivity selected.
 - e) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 8) Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
- 9) Color: White.
- 10) Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors must be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at FACU for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by FACU.
- 11) Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units must be selectable at FACU for 15 or 20 deg F (8 or 11 deg C) per minute.
- 12) Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units must be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and must be settable at FACU to operate at 135 or 155 deg F (57 or 68 deg C).
- 13) Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
- 14) Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

2.06 DUCT SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Description: Photoelectric-type, duct-mounted smoke detector.

B. Performance Criteria:

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. NFPA 72.
 - b. UL 268A.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Detectors must be two-wire type.
 - b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
 - c. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 - d. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
 - e. Detector address must be accessible from FACU and must be able to identify detector's location within system and its sensitivity setting.
 - f. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - 1) Primary status.
 - 2) Device type.
 - 3) Present average value.
 - 4) Present sensitivity selected.
 - 5) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 - g. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
 - h. Each sensor must have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
 - i. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
 - j. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.07 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. Description: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. NFPA 72
 - b. NFPA 720.
 - c. UL 2075.
 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
 - b. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into sensing cell.
 - c. Detector must provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
 - d. Detector must send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
 - e. Locate, mount, and wire in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - f. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
 - g. Test button simulates alarm condition.
 - h. Integral alarm that provides four-pulse signal pattern that is distinctive from fire evacuation signal

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- 1) Minimum rating of 85 dBA when mounted at 10 feet.

2.08 HEAT DETECTORS

A. Combination-Type Heat Detectors:

1. Performance Criteria:

a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 1) NFPA 72.
- 2) UL 521.

b. General Characteristics:

- 1) Temperature sensors must test for and communicate sensitivity range of device.
- c. Actuated by fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C) or rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F (8 deg C) per minute unless otherwise indicated.
- d. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
- e. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- f. Detector must have functional humidity range of 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
- g. Color: White.

B. Fixed-Temperature-Type Heat Detectors:

1. Performance Criteria:

a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 1) NFPA 72.
- 2) UL 521.

b. General Characteristics:

- 1) Actuated by temperature that exceeds fixed temperature of 135 deg F (57 deg C), unless otherwise indicated..
- 2) Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
- 3) Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- 4) Detector must have functional humidity range of 10 to 90 percent.
- 5) Color: White.

2.09 MULTICRITERIA AND MULTISENSOR FIRE DETECTORS

A. Description: Fire-sensing detectors using multiple means of detection.

B. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72.

2. General Characteristics:

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- a. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
- b. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to FACU.
- c. Automatically adjusts its sensitivity by means of drift compensation and smoothing algorithms. Detector must send trouble alarm if it is incapable of compensating for existing conditions.
- d. Test button tests sensors in detector.
- e. Operator at FACU, having designated access level, must be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - 1) Primary status.
 - 2) Device type.
 - 3) Present sensitivity selected.
 - 4) Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- f. Detector must have functional humidity range within 10 to 90 percent relative humidity.
- g. Color: White.
- h. Comply with UL requirements.
- i. Sensors (Multisensor Type): Detector must be comprised of four sensing elements including smoke sensor, carbon monoxide sensor, infrared sensor, and heat sensor.
 - 1) Smoke sensor must be photoelectric type as described in "System Smoke Detectors" Article.
 - 2) Carbon monoxide sensor must be as described in "Carbon Monoxide Detectors" Article.
 - 3) Heat sensor must be as described in "Heat Detectors" Article.
 - 4) Each sensor must be separately listed in accordance with requirements for its detector type.

2.10 FIRE-ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Fire-Alarm Audible Notification Appliances:

- 1. Description: Horns, bells, or other notification devices that cannot output voice messages.
- 2. Performance Criteria:
 - a. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1) NFPA 72.
 - b. General Characteristics:
 - 1) Individually addressed, connected to signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 2) Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 3) Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75 dB(A-weighted) minimum rated output.
 - 4) Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81 dB(A-weighted) minimum rated output.
 - 5) Sounders, High Volume 24 V(dc): Less than 6 mA of alarm current.
 - 6) Sounders, Low Volume 24 V(dc): Less than 4 mA of alarm current.
 - 7) Audible notification appliances must have functional humidity range of 10 to 95 percent relative humidity.
 - 8) Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24 V(dc); with provision for housing operating mechanism behind grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns must produce sound-

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

pressure level of 90 dB(A-weighted), measured 10 ft. (3 m) from horn, using coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

- 9) Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- 10) For devices used as notification devices for fire alarm and Mass Notification Systems, housing shall read "ALERT". For all other devices, housing shall read "FIRE".

B. Fire-Alarm Visible Notification Appliances:

1. Performance Criteria:

a. Regulatory Requirements:

- 1) NFPA 72.
- 2) UL 1971.

b. General Characteristics:

- 1) Rated Light Output:
 - a) 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in field.
- 2) Clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on aluminum faceplate.
- 3) Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
- 4) For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings must be determined with guards in place.
- 5) Flashing must be in temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
- 6) Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
- 7) Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.
- 8) For devices used as notification devices for fire alarm and Mass Notification Systems, housing shall read "ALERT". For all other devices, housing shall read "FIRE".

2.11 FIRE-ALARM REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. NFPA 72.

2. General Characteristics:

- a. Annunciator functions must match those of FACU for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions must match those of FACU, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 - 1) Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- b. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights must match those of FACU. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

2.12 FIRE-ALARM ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. NFPA 72.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Include address-setting means on module.
 - b. Store internal identifying code for control panel use to identify module type.
 - c. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
 - d. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
 - e. Control Module:
 - 1) Operate notification devices.
 - 2) Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.13 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTERS (DACTs)

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. NFPA 72.
2. General Characteristics:
 - a. DACT must be acceptable to remote central station and must be listed for fire-alarm use.
 - b. Functional Performance: Unit must receive alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from FACU and automatically capture one telephone line(s) and dial preset number for remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals must be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter must initiate local trouble signal and transmit signal indicating loss of telephone line to remote alarm receiving station over remaining line. Transmitter must automatically report telephone service restoration to central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter must initiate local trouble signal.
 - c. Local functions and display at DACT must include the following:
 - 1) Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2) Programming device.
 - 3) LED display.
 - 4) Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5) Communications failure with central station or FACU.
 - d. Digital data transmission must include the following:
 - 1) Address of alarm-initiating device.
 - 2) Address of supervisory signal.
 - 3) Address of trouble-initiating device.
 - 4) Loss of ac supply.
 - 5) Loss of power.
 - 6) Low battery.
 - 7) Abnormal test signal.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

- 8) Communication bus failure.
- e. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- f. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Preinstallation Testing: Perform verification of functionality of installed components of existing system prior to starting work. Document equipment or components not functioning as designed.
- B. Protection of In-Place Conditions: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect facility during construction.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. Comply with NECA 305, NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before other trades have completed cleanup must be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed, but not yet placed, in service must be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage in accordance with manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than **78 inch (1980 mm)** above finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in normal path of egress within **60 inch (1520 mm)** of exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on background of contrasting color.
 - 3. Operable part of manual fire-alarm box must be **48 inch (1220 mm)** above floor level. Devices must be mounted at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- and Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

2. Comply with "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 3. Smooth ceiling spacing must not exceed **30 ft. (9 m)**.
 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas must be determined in accordance with Annex A or Annex B in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than **36 inch (910 mm)** from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than **12 inch (300 mm)** from lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover must remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend full width of duct. Tubes more than **36 inch (9100 mm)** long must be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than **6 inch (150 mm)** below ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with device-operating mechanism concealed behind grille. Install devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least **6 inch (150 mm)** below ceiling. Install devices at same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near device they monitor.

3.04 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Division 26.
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate must be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Division 26.

3.05 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 290523 "Control-Voltage Cables for Fire Safety and Emergency Communications"
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

3.06 PATHWAYS

- A. Install pathways in accordance with Division 26.
- B. Pathways must be installed in EMT.
 - 1. Pathways must be installed in EMT or RSC.
 - 2. Exposed raceways must be painted red enamel.
 - 3. Concealed and exposed junction boxes must be painted red enamel.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08. Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install interface device less than **36 inch (910 mm)** from device controlled. Make addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
 - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 - 6. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 7. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
 - 8. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
 - 9. Supervisory connections at ERCES.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 27.
- B. Install framed instructions in location visible from FACU.

3.09 GROUNDING

- A. Ground FACU and associated circuits in accordance with Division 26.
- B. Ground shielded cables at control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests must be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Administrant for Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Owner will engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.
 - 2. Engage qualified testing agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

3. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection must be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in "Inspection" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only installed components.
 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" table in "Testing" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Test audible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Perform test using portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ASA S1.4 Part 1/IEC 61672-1.
 4. Test audible appliances for private operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 5. Test visible appliances for public operating mode in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 6. Factory-authorized service representative must prepare "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in "Documentation" section of "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and "Inspection and Testing Form" in "Records" section of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
 - E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
 - H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- 3.11 **DEMONSTRATION**
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system. Provide video recording of training to Owner.
- 3.12 **MAINTENANCE**
- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service must include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies must be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

1. Include visual inspections in accordance with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Perform tests in "Test Methods" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Perform tests per "Testing Frequencies" table in "Testing" paragraph of "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.13 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement must include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software must include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

END OF SECTION 294621.11

SECTION 294621.11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEMS (continued):

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK